

**Inntroduction to**  
**REPUBLIC OF UZBEKISTAN**

**Flag and State Emblem of Republic of Uzbekistan**



## Geography

Uzbekistan is a completely landlocked country located in the Central Asian region of the Eurasia landmass in the Eastern hemisphere. It is slightly larger than California covering 447,400 sq km, bordering Afghanistan in the south, Kazakhstan in the north, Turkmenistan in the west, and Tajikistan and Kyrgyzstan in the east.



The Afghan border is the shortest (137km), but most guarded and watched. However it is still porous due to the lack of resources to maintain adequate border control and the corruption of custom officials. The Tajikistani border is 1,161 km long and is the second most guarded including measures like unmarked minefields on certain stretches and permanent garrisons of Special Forces and National Security Service battalion in addition to the regular border guard. Still it is reported to be porous and is crossed regularly by smugglers, drug traffickers and terrorists. The same is true for the border with Kyrgyzstan, with which Uzbekistan has an unresolved territorial dispute, although there are no reported minefields or deployments, other than border guards and customs. The borders with Turkmenistan and Kazakhstan are considered of no security risk and have border guards and customs on lowest alert.

## Climate

The climate of modern Uzbekistan has been characterized by a lot of fluctuations due to the drying out of Aral Sea. Generally it is extremely continental. In a zone of deserts and steppes covering all of the plain area, winter is short, snow is not enough, and it thaws quickly, but summer is hot, long, dry and dusty. Autumn is cool and rainy. The average temperature in January is from -12°C (10°F) in the north to +3°C (37°F) in the south, in July it ranges from 26°C (79°F) in the north up to 46°C (114°F) in the shade in the south.

In the west and northwest, Uzbekistan is not protected from humid air coming from the area of the Volga River or from the Northern Caucasus bringing extremely cold snaps in winter. In summer these air masses, moving over the deserts, are getting warmer and

drier causing a lot of precipitation in the mountains of Tian-Shan and Pamir in the northeast and east.

Precipitation in the territory of Uzbekistan is distributed irregularly because of the location of the republic in the depth of the wide continent and the complexity of its relief. The western plain and the Fergana valley are the driest zones with 100 - 300 mm of precipitation a year. From the plains to the foothills there is more precipitation and on the western and southwestern slopes of the mountains, which are open to the humid air mass, there may be more than 2000 mm of precipitation a year.

## **Terrain**

Nearly four-fifths of Uzbekistan's territory, the sun-dried western area, has the appearance of a wasteland. In the northwest the Turan Plain rises 200 to 300 feet (60 to 90 metres) above sea level around the Aral Sea in Qoraqalpoghiston. This terrain merges on the south with the Kyzylkum (Uzbek: Qizilqum) Desert and farther west becomes the Ustyurt Plateau, a region of low ridges, salt marshes, sinkholes, and caverns.



**View of semi desert in early spring and early summer**

Southeast of the Aral Sea, small hills break the flatness of the low-lying Kyzylkum Desert, and, much farther east, a series of mountain ridges partition Uzbekistan's territory. The western Tien Shan includes the Karzhantau, Ugam, and Pskem ranges, the latter featuring the 14,104-foot (4,299-metre) Beshtor Peak, the country's highest point. Also a part of the western Tien Shan are the Chatkal and Kurama ranges.



The Gissar (Hissor) and Alay (Oloy) ranges stand across the Fergana valley, which lies south of the western Tien Shan. The Mirzachul desert, which is southwest of Tashkent, lies between the Tien Shan spurs to the north and the Turkestan, Marguzar, and Nuratau ranges to the south. In south-central Uzbekistan the Zeravshan valley opens westward; the cities of Samarkand (Samarqand) and Bukhara (Bukhoro) grace this ancient cultural centre.



Two big rivers – Syrdarya in the north and Amudarya in the south - supply water to an area in the northeast and southeast of the country in which most of the population live. They run southeast to northwest almost parallel to each other and empty into Aral Sea, which only 30 years ago was comparable to Lake Superior but now is quarter of its former size and a fifth of the volume. Pollution, including nuclear waste from buried weapon manufacture process materials, pesticides, and human generated refuse reached critical level and now being spread globally, by winds, from exposed dry lakebed. Water is still being diverted from both rivers, despite numerous international accords to restore Aral, signed by Uzbekistan, and after being used for irrigation, dumped into manmade lakes.



**View of the shore of artificial lake Aydarqul**

**Population** According to 2006 estimates the population stands at 27,000,000 but an accurate number is increasingly hard to arrive at due to unreliable government data and migration out of the country, because of unemployment that is estimated at 4,000,000, with more than 90% of these people working in Russia. Since independence, President Karimov and his inner circle have devoted themselves entirely to privatization of profits of all income producing public entities, letting them formally stay public, which has led to the rapid redistribution of wealth, resulting in a concentration

of capital and ownership in the hands of less than 1% of the population with the rest of the people simply getting by. Uzbekistan has a 99% literacy rate and the compulsory education age is 7. Uzbekistan has a draft for military service at the age of 18.

## Government

Uzbekistan declared independence from the Soviet Union in September 2001. Islam Karimov, taking advantage of his position as First Secretary of the Communist party and Chairman of the Uzbek Council of People Representatives, following “democratization” in Russia and USSR, won presidential elections elsewhere in the former Soviet Union in 1991, in the first contested elections ever. In August 2001 he seized an opportunity, provided by the aftermath of the August Coup in Moscow, and on his own power terminated the Union agreement. Uzbekistan adopted its new constitution in 1992, with the country declared a democratic republic, with Majlis – of freely elected representatives of the people and the president elected for a five-year term both by general, direct elections with a secret ballot. In reality, through abuse of executive branch, Karimov arranged for referendum in 1995, extending his term in office until 2000 and in 2002 called for another one, this time having people to vote on the change of the term in office from five to seven years. He is up for reelection in 2007. In 2005 Uzbekistan, on initiative of the president, passed a constitutional amendment, creating the senate as an upper chamber of the legislative assembly, but all senators were handpicked and appointed by the president himself, based on personal loyalty to him.



Uzbekistan declared independence from the Soviet Union in September 2001. Islam Karimov, taking advantage of his position as First Communist party and Chairman of People Representatives, following “democratization” in Russia and USSR, won presidential elections elsewhere in the former Soviet Union in 1991, in the first contested elections ever. In August 2001 he seized an opportunity, provided by the aftermath of the August Coup in Moscow, and on his own power terminated the Union agreement. Uzbekistan adopted its new constitution in 1992, with the country declared a democratic republic, with Majlis – of freely elected representatives of the people and the president elected for a five-year term both by general, direct elections with a secret ballot. In reality, through abuse of executive branch, Karimov arranged for referendum in 1995, extending his term in office until 2000 and in 2002 called for another one, this time having people to vote on the change of the term in office from five to seven years. He is up for reelection in 2007. In 2005 Uzbekistan, on initiative of the president, passed a constitutional amendment, creating the senate as an upper chamber of the legislative assembly, but all senators were handpicked and appointed by the president himself, based on personal loyalty to him.

### Oliy Majlis (Parliament) building in Tashkent →



The vertical power structure in Uzbekistan is absolute with all local hokims (mayors of towns and provincial governors) appointed personally by Karimov, confidentially at first, with subsequent sessions of Majlis formally confirming them in office.

### Appointed mayor of the town →



## History

The first human settlements discovered in Uzbekistan, date back 35,000 years. For thousands of years people in the area survived on subsistence farming and trade, which became lucrative with the emergence of the Great Silk Road, linking China and the Far East with Europe. That trade gave rise to the cities Samarqand, Bukhara, Khiva, Urgench, and Kokand.

After Portugal discovered a sea route to India, the Great Silk Road started losing its importance and eventually fell into decline, as international trade logistics on land withered, and trade by sea prospered, with the entire Central Asian kingdom suffering stagnation and depression.

In 1865 Russian expeditionary corps invaded Central Asia and brought its three kingdoms – Khiva, Kokand and Bukhara under dominion of the Russian Emperor. Russians started growing cotton in hopes of competing with and displacing Britain, as a major cotton producer and textile manufacturer, which led to the emergence of cotton as a monoculture in Uzbekistan. It still remains such today.

Minori Kalon in Bukhara



The Soviet Socialist Republic of Uzbekistan was formed in 1924, on Stalin's orders, dividing former Soviet Turkestan into five republics, roughly along the ethnic lines, which eventually became independent states, following the collapse of the Soviet Union. Modern Uzbekistan is a peculiar mixture of failed agricultural, industrial and social policies and institutions, both Soviet and post-Soviet, kept afloat only by a balance of people's patience and government repression. Contrasts, as in pictures below, are a way of life and most curious probably, is the development of cellular networks while sewers are failing, or even absent.

Lobby of the Intercontinental Hotel



Very clean outhouse



Repression manifested itself fully in May 2005, when popular uprising in Andijon, one of the major cities of the Fergana Valley, where population density is the highest and unemployment is rampant, was brutally crushed. More than a thousand people, including women and children, were hit by machine-guns and run over by armored personnel carriers.



**Friendly  
police captain →**



### **Armored Personnel Carrier of the Ministry of Interior Special Assignments Battalion patrolling in Andijon**

According to eyewitnesses, soldiers appeared drugged and shot their AK74 assault rifles indiscriminately, causing the death of a few emergency medical personnel and incidents of friendly fire. Recruitment into the Uzbek Special Forces and especially the National Security Service and Ministry of Interior battalions is increasingly taking a medieval turn, with preference given to orphaned boys, who are raised in the spirit of absolute loyalty to the president.

### **Foreign Relations**

In 1991 Uzbekistan was recognized by the USA, European Union and United Nations, becoming a member of the UN and is now signatory to every major international treaty, including some that require its government to provide for human rights and liberties and freedom of economic relations. One of many ways Uzbek leadership avoids accountability, is that it does not ratify signed treaties. Direct US-Uzbek relations started in 1992, with the visit of the then Secretary of State James Baker, and did not have any particular importance to the US, except for human rights violations and mining of gold by Newmont Mining, Inc. After 9/11 however, Uzbekistan came into prominence as a potential ally in the War on Terror, and the Uzbek government cooperated with the US State Department and DoD, providing the old Soviet airfield at Khanabad as the forward operating base, known as K2.



**Colin Powell →  
and Donald Rumsfeld  
←  
with Uzbek president  
Karimov in 2001**



With the peaceful democratic revolutions in Georgia in 2002, Ukraine in 2004 and Kyrgyzstan in 2005, Karimov became increasingly suspicious that his regime is next in line. So he openly accused the US of sponsoring democratic opposition movements in all of the above countries and Uzbekistan, broke off security cooperation, gave the US an ultimatum on K2, setting the deadline for the base closure, suspended activity of all international NGOs, including Peace Corps, in Uzbekistan and forced them out of the country.

Uzbekistan has been a member of the Shanghai Cooperation Organization since its inception, and started promoting it feverishly lately, especially after May 13, 2005, the Andijon massacre. Right then Karimov made hasty visits to Moscow and Beijing, where he got assurances of unwavering political and economic support from the old imperial master – Russia, and old party comrade – China.



**Uzbek president Karimov with Russian president Putin ←**

**Presidents of the SCO member countries in Shanghai: left to right – Karimov, Putin and President of Kazakhstan Nursultan Nazarbayev.**

**Karimov with Chinese premiere Jian Ze Ming**



Since May 2005 Uzbekistan has been openly hostile towards the United States and is relying on Moscow, Beijing and neighboring Kazakhstan in its foreign policies.

**Economy**

Major exports of Uzbekistan are cotton, natural gas, gold, non ferrous ores, oil, electricity and uranium, with cotton accounting for more than 80% of export revenues.

Uzbekistan today, is second only to the US in cotton export, and given the size of the country, it is obvious that this ranking comes at the expense of other crops, needed badly, especially for foodstuffs production. Economic activity and foreign investments are greatly hampered by the government choke hold on business and micromanagement. Uzbek law does not allow private ownership of land or any other major means of production. The country is still, probably second in the world last, next to Cuba, in exercising central planning of the economy. This is a major weakness. The country is dependent on cotton exports disproportionately. Energy exports are significant but

revenues are not invested in the modern, growth providing sectors of economy and absence of free enterprise is holding up the development. Generally, Uzbekistan is still an agrarian economy with a rapidly diminishing industrial sector.

### **Religion**

Islam is by far, the declared dominant religious faith in Uzbekistan. In the early 1990s, many of the Russians remaining in the republic, (about 8 percent of the population) were Orthodox Christians.

A miniscule number of people are familiar with the Muslim tradition, which was completely destroyed during the Bolshevik revolution and subsequent building of socialism in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century. Very few are practicing Muslims, who pray 5 times a day, go on the haj and adhere strictly to the prescribed Islamic conventions. People generally are open-minded, which led to a proliferation of missionaries and cults. The government, at first, flirted with Islam as a national identity idea, and president Karimov even took an oath of office in 2002 on the Holy Quran.



Later years saw an increasing hostility to Islam, practiced outside of registered and monitored mosques, culminating in open repression, taken to unreasonable extent, with detention of any bearded men on suspicion of being radicals, extremists and terrorists.

### **Ethnic Groups**

The Uzbek nation today is comprised of the following ethnicities: Uzbek 80%, Russian 5.5%, Tajik 5%, Kazakh 3%, Karakalpak 2.5%, Tatar 1.5%, other 2.5% The "other" category includes representatives of 130 ethnic groups, who reside in Uzbekistan due to migration, evacuation, deportation, refugee crises, natural disaster recovery effort etc. including descendants of Germans, Austrians, Hungarian, Polish, Chech WWI POWs, WWII Japanese POWs and peoples (Volga Germans, Koreans, Chechens, Crimean Tatars) forcibly relocated during 1930-40s.

**Second row left to right - Russian girl, Kyrgyz youth. First row left to right - Uzbek and Tatar girls.**

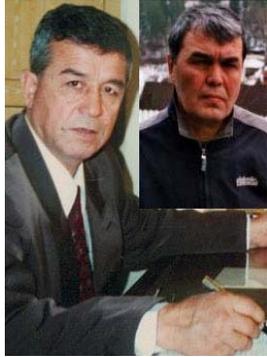


**Tajik girl**



**Young Uzbek couple**

Uzbekistan enjoyed ethnic harmony well into 1980s, save for one major incident of clashes in the Fergana Valley in 1990, whereas elsewhere in the former Soviet Union ethnic tensions were rising, leading to outbreaks of violence between ethnic groups, sometimes on the scale of civil war.



Today, there is national peace in Uzbekistan, but rather due to the oppression, than to a true coexistence of people of different ethnicities, and given deteriorating economic violence between them is a strong probability.

← Uzbek official in front of the portrait of Muhammad Solih, leader of the banned political party Birlik.

### Culture

For most of the twentieth century, Uzbekistan had what today is condemned across-the-board, as “Soviet culture”. It was a cohesive culture, with strong emphasis on unity of all working people of the world and an equally strong belief in eventual triumph of communism. Despite official condemnation and attempts to substitute it with a new, truly Uzbek national identity, customs and holidays, the cultural references and habits of Soviet times survive today. Uzbeks eagerly embraced Navruz, the ancient, pre-islamic New Year, which was declared a national holiday and is celebrated on March 21, along with Valentine’s Day, which is celebrated informally, along with the old Soviet March 8<sup>th</sup> – International Women’s Day.



Search for 1991 and necessity for the present itself as people.

Authorities, in figure produced century

descent, who built a vast empire, with Samarqand as its capital.

national identity began in became an urgent political government, trying to a new government of all

their search for a unifying Amir Timur – a 14<sup>th</sup> conqueror of Mongol

Contrary to historical evidence, Uzbek leadership created an image of a wise, caring, paternalistic nation builder, erected monuments in every major city and directs the Ministry of Education to teach history in schools according to this political doctrine. A personal cult of the current president is surfing the wave of reverence towards this artificial representation of Amir Timur.

Uzbekistanis of all ethnicities are generally very respectful of family, family values and their elderly, although with today’s economic hardship traditions are rapidly eroding. Probably the surge of traditionalism on the part of people with means is characteristic of difficult times, whereas people of modest means and low-income classes, which is more than 80% of the population, are increasingly turning to Western culture, particularly, modern Russian, in search of ways of survival.

Contrary to the expectations of Westerners and constant talk in the State Department and US media Uzbekistan is not a Muslim country. Religion is absolutely of no concern to the overwhelming majority of people and the only influence on lifestyle is limited to celebrations of circumcisions for the boys and funerals. Uzbekistanis are a fun loving, partying and drinking nation with strong devotion to soccer. Weddings typically last at least three days.



### **Typical summer party →**

### **FamilyThe**

Traditional Uzbek family usually stretches for three generations with quite a number of families, particularly in rural communities having four generations living together. Improved economic conditions and socialized healthcare, during Soviet times, lead to an explosive population growth, which somewhat slowed in the 1990s and even more so in the new century. Still Uzbekistan has most of its population younger than 21.

Elders have a say, but decision makers are increasingly more and more income producers, so the influence of elders is overrated in most accounts published in the West. Women's liberation took place in the 1930s and continues to this day. Despite futile attempts of some clerics and traditionalists, women play a more and more important role in today's Uzbekistan, in some cases, especially in the capital, appearing to be a decisive economic force.

### **Foods**

It is hard to even begin to describe the diversity and taste spectrum of traditional Uzbek cuisine. Unfortunately, as is the case with many sophisticated food cultures, Uzbek food is no exception, and has suffered transformation into a short order, quick bite, fast food culture.

In order to fully appreciate traditional cuisine one should have time and connections. A major dish readily available in the streets during lunch hour is palov. The generic variety is pot roast of beef, lamb mixture with layers of carrots and rice on top, spiced by cumin. Shashlik – pieces of lamb on the stick over coals is a staple of lunch hour everywhere side by side with palov. During spring –summer-fall there is a variety of fresh fruit and vegetables in abundance, which led to a whole industry of salad making. Taste is usually superior to that of typical Western salad, because of freshness, but one should exercise caution, due to water quality.

## Arts

Song and dance are the most beloved art forms that came to flourish under independence, at the expense of professionalism that was characteristic of Soviet times.

Since state control is now limited only to attacks on the president and official economic policies, anything goes in song and dance. Because it is relatively cheap to produce in Uzbekistan, varieties of performances are staged in every club and restaurant, and sometimes devolve into shocking, seedy displays.



### Amateur dance ensemble →

Classic ballet is state supported and the troupe of the Navoi Theater tours the world regularly.

Music is predominantly pop, with some national tinge to it. Old, traditional music is performed live during weddings, and there is an enormous archive of recorded traditional forms.

The most lucrative crafts these days are carpet making, lacquered box painting and woodcutting.

Outdoor entertainment is a traditional game on horseback – uloq - and races and darboz – tightrope walkers, masharaboz – clown shows.



### ← Darboz performing in Seattle

Sports were always very strong and still today Uzbek athletes have a strong showing in international events, especially women, with Olympic Gold medals in freestyle, judo, Greco-Roman wrestling, Silver in gymnastics and a winning team in the Asia Cup in soccer.

### Members of Junior National Gymnastics Team →



## **Language**

Language and especially the alphabet were always hot political items in Uzbekistan. Before the Bolshevik revolution Uzbek, which was known as Turki, used Arabic script and grammar was borrowed from Persian and Arabic. With Russian domination and particularly after the revolution, language became the primary ideological tool, and Arabic script was discarded in favor of Cyrillic. After independence, Karimov and his government, reluctantly allowed debate over the national language, and did what they saw to fit their own agenda best. As of 2005 Uzbek is officially the only state language and official script is Latin, with a few modified characters, to accommodate some Uzbek phonemes.

## The Uzbek Alphabet

Uzbek Letter	Cyrillic	Pronunciation
<b>A a</b>	<b>А а</b>	As the <b>a</b> in <b>father</b> or the <b>a</b> in <b>dad</b> .
<b>B b</b>	<b>Б б</b>	As the <b>b</b> in <b>boat</b> , except at the end of a word where it is pronounced as the <b>p</b> in <b>pat</b> .
<b>D d</b>	<b>Д д</b>	As the <b>d</b> in <b>dog</b> , except at the end of a word where it is pronounced as the <b>t</b> in <b>tog</b> .
<b>E e</b>	<b>Е е, Э э*</b>	As the <b>e</b> in <b>bed</b> . Sometimes as the <b>ey</b> in <b>hey</b> .
<b>F f</b>	<b>Ф ф</b>	As the <b>f</b> in <b>fast</b> .
<b>G g</b>	<b>Г г</b>	As the <b>g</b> in <b>golf</b> .
<b>H h</b>	<b>Х х</b>	As the <b>h</b> in <b>hey</b> .
<b>I i</b>	<b>И и</b>	As the <b>i</b> in <b>bit</b> . Sometimes as the <b>ee</b> in <b>meet</b> .
<b>J j</b>	<b>Ж ж</b>	As the <b>j</b> in <b>jog</b> .
<b>K k</b>	<b>К к</b>	As the <b>k</b> in <b>kit</b> .
<b>L l</b>	<b>Л л</b>	As the <b>l</b> in <b>little</b> .
<b>M m</b>	<b>М м</b>	As the <b>m</b> in <b>men</b> .
<b>N n</b>	<b>Н н</b>	As the <b>n</b> in <b>nod</b> .
<b>O o</b>	<b>О о</b>	As the <b>a</b> in <b>father</b> , but longer and with slightly rounded lips. No English equivalent.
<b>P p</b>	<b>П п</b>	As the <b>p</b> in <b>pit</b> .
<b>Q q</b>	<b>Қ қ</b>	As the <b>k</b> in <b>king</b> , but pronounced much further back in the throat. No English equivalent.
<b>R r</b>	<b>Р р</b>	As the Spanish <b>r</b> , with a roll or trill.
<b>S s</b>	<b>С с</b>	As the <b>s</b> in <b>sit</b> .
<b>T t</b>	<b>Т т</b>	As the <b>t</b> in <b>toy</b> .
<b>U u</b>	<b>У у</b>	As the <b>u</b> in <b>nuke</b> . Near <b>k</b> or <b>g</b> as the <b>u</b> in the French <b>tu</b> .
<b>V v</b>	<b>В в</b>	As the <b>w</b> in <b>wine</b> . Sometimes as the <b>v</b> in <b>vine</b> .
<b>X x</b>	<b>Х х</b>	Like <b>h</b> but rough and throaty, as the <b>ch</b> in the German <b>Bach</b> . No English equivalent.
<b>Y y</b>	<b>Й й</b>	As the <b>y</b> in <b>yet</b> .
<b>Z z</b>	<b>З з</b>	As the <b>z</b> in <b>zip</b> .
<b>O' o'</b>	<b>Ў ў</b>	As the <b>o</b> in <b>broke</b> . Near <b>k</b> or <b>g</b> as the <b>eu</b> in the French <b>peu</b> .
<b>G' g'</b>	<b>Ғ ғ</b>	Like <b>x</b> but voiced. As the <b>gh</b> in the Arabic <b>gharb</b> .
<b>Sh sh</b>	<b>Ш ш</b>	As the <b>sh</b> in <b>she</b> .
<b>Ch ch</b>	<b>Ч ч</b>	As the <b>ch</b> in <b>cheese</b> .
<b>Ng Ng</b>	<b>Ң ң</b>	As the <b>ng</b> in <b>sing</b> .
<b>'</b>	<b>Ъ ъ</b>	A short pause. A glottal stop.

\* Э э appears only at the beginning of words, it represents the lasting script E e. When the Cyrillic script E e appears at the beginning of the word it represents the Latin script Ye ye.

## **General**

We have decided to use the Latin alphabet throughout this manual. The Latin alphabet is the official alphabet of Uzbek as spoken in Uzbekistan, and should be adequate for most purposes. Despite this, any student of Uzbek should be at least familiar with the Uzbek Cyrillic alphabet. The pronunciation of several of these characters has been slightly simplified to avoid confusion and unnecessary complexity.

## **Pronunciation**

It should be noted that there is not just one dialect of Uzbek in Uzbekistan, there are many; a surprisingly large number considering the relatively small size of the country. As such, pronunciation may vary significantly from town to town and province to province. The alphabet and sounds as described above and used throughout this manual are those of the literary language. They will be understood perfectly well throughout Uzbekistan. The most difficult sounds will be **o**, **q**, **x** and **g'**. Care should be taken not to pronounce **o** as the English 'o,' which is represented by the Uzbek **o'**, or the English a, which is represented by the Uzbek **a**. These four difficult sounds should be learned with the help of a native speaker or with a recording. Care should also be taken to properly pronounce double consonants like "tt," "mm" and "ss." In English double consonants are always pronounced as single consonants. In Uzbek this is not the case and there is a distinction between words like "qatiq" (yoghurt) and "qattiq" (hard). The first is pronounced "qa-tiq." The second is "qat-tiq."

## **The Cyrillic Script**

It should be noted that the Uzbek Cyrillic alphabet is not the same as that used in the Russian language. Many characters are pronounced differently, and there are a few extra letters and missing letters as well. The Latin script detailed here is in alphabetical order. The Cyrillic script is not. Two characters are missing from the Cyrillic script represented here: Ю ю (Yu yu) and Я я (Ya ya).

# Lesson 1

## People and Geography

### Odamlar va Jo'g'rofiya

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Simple greetings and basic introductions in Uzbek
- How to greet people in formal and informal situations in Uzbekistan
- Personal pronouns
- Possessive pronouns
- How to use the verbs “to be” and “to live” in the present tense
- Basic geographical names of Uzbekistan.

## PEOPLE



**1. Listen to these simple greetings and phrases in Uzbek and repeat them after the speaker.**

Hello (to anyone other than young children and close friends)      Assalomu alaykum.

Hello (response to an older person or to one of equal age)\*      Assalomu alaykum.

Hello (response to a younger person)      Vaalaykum assalom.

Hi (to children and friends, is both response and initial greeting)      Salom.

Use two or three of the greetings below after the initial greeting and handshake.

Are you well?      Yaxshimisiz?

How are you?      Qandaysiz?

How are things going?      Ishlaringiz yaxshimi?

How are you doing?      Yaxshi yuribsizmi?

\*The younger person should always initiate the greeting; this should only be used in circumstances where you weren't able to do so.

**2. Exchange greetings with your teacher and your partner. How would you greet individuals of different age groups or social standings? How would you greet a close friend, as opposed to an acquaintance or stranger? Note: Uzbeks generally do not vary their greetings with the time of day (i.e. ‘good morning’ is normally the same as ‘good afternoon’).**



**3. Familiarize yourself with personal pronouns. Listen to the audio and repeat after the speaker.**

I	Men
you	sen, siz*
he	U
she	U
we	Biz
you (plural)	siz, sizlar*
they	Ular

-*Sen* is used only for young children and close friends. -*Siz* is used for anyone else.

-The plural of *sen* is *siz*.

-*Sizlar* represents more than one singular *siz*.

\*Throughout the rest of this manual “singular” will be abbreviated as ‘s’, “plural” as ‘p’, “formal” as ‘f’, and “informal” as ‘i’. So, (s/f) indicates “siz,” (s/i) “sen,” (p/f) “sizlar” and (p/i) “siz”.



**4. Listen to the following dialogues and repeat after the speaker. Read the dialogues in pairs.**

**Formal (Abbos is young, Lola is older)**

Abbos: Hello!

Lola: Hello.

Abbos: How are you?

Lola: I am well, thank you. And yourself? How are you?

Abbos: Thank you, I'm well.

**Assalomu alaykum!**

Vaalaykum assalom.

Qandaysiz? Yaxshimisiz? Yaxshi yuribsizmi?

Rahmat. O'zingiz-chi? Yaxshi yuribsizmi?

**Rahmat, yaxshiman.**

**Formal (same age)**

Odil: Hello!

Doniyor: Hello.

Odil: How are you?

Doniyor: I'm fine, and yourself?

How are things?

Odil: Things are fine, thank you.

Assalomu alaykum!

Assalomu alaykum.

**Qandaysiz? Yaxshimisiz?**

**Yaxshiman, o'zingiz-chi? Ishlaringiz**

**yaxshimi?**

Yaxshi, rahmat.

**Informal**

Dono: Hi, Nigora!

Nigora: Hi!

Dono: How are you?

Nigora: Good. And you?

Dono: Good!

Nigora: Bye!

Dono: OK, bye!

**Salom, Nigora!**

**Salom!**

Qandaysan?

Yaxshi. O'zing-chi?

Yaxshi!

Xo'p, xayr!

Mayli, xayr!

5. Using the dialogues above as a model, compose your own similar dialogues. Work in pairs or in small groups.

## GEOGRAPHY



Unlike most Uzbek verbs the present tense of the verb “to be” (*bo’l-*) has no written form. It is the Uzbek language’s only irregular verb. Instead, the personal pronouns (or modified forms thereof) are attached directly to the preceding adjective or noun. The forms are as follows:

Men	noun/adjective+man	Biz	noun/adjective+miz
Siz	noun/adjective+siz	Sizlar	noun/adjective+sizlar
Sen	noun/adjective+san	Siz	noun/adjective+siz
U	noun/adjective*	Ular	noun/adjective*

So, the English phrase “I am Uzbek” would be “Men o’zbekman” in Uzbek. “You are Uzbek” would be “Siz o’zбекиsiz.” “He/she is Uzbek” would be “U o’zbek.”

\*There is no suffix at all for the third-person forms.

In the examples below “+dan” attached to all the place names is a suffix meaning “from.” Formally the suffix is called a “case,” specifically, the ablative case. The suffix representing “to be” has been written in **bold** for added clarity.

I am from Bukhara.	Men Buxorodan <b>man</b> .
You (s/f) are from Samarqand.	Siz Samarqandd <b>ansiz</b> .
You (s/i) are from Samarqand.	Sen Samarqandd <b>ansan</b> .
He/She/It is from Tashkent.	U Toshkentdan.
We are from Qarshi.	Biz Qarshidan <b>miz</b> .
You (p/f) are from Ferghana.	Sizlar Farg'onad <b>ansizlar</b> .
You (p/i) are from Ferghana.	Siz Farg'onad <b>ansiz</b> .
They are from Nukus.	Ular Nukusdan.



**6. Listen to the following sentences and repeat after the speaker.**

1. I am Uzbek. I am from Uzbekistan.	Men o'zbek <b>man</b> . Men O'zbekistondan <b>man</b> .
2. You (s/f) are Uzbek. You (s/f) are from Uzbekistan.	Siz o'zbek <b>siz</b> . Siz O'zbekistond <b>ansiz</b> .
3. You (s/i) are Uzbek. You (s/i) are from Tashkent.	Sen o'zbek <b>san</b> . Sen Toshkentd <b>ansan</b> .
4. He/She/It is Uzbek. He/She/It is from Samarqand.	U o'zbek. U Samarqandd <b>an</b> .
5. We are Uzbek. We are from Bukhara.	Biz o'zbek <b>miz</b> . Biz Buxorodan <b>miz</b> .
6. You (p/f) are Uzbek. You (p/f) are from Urgench.	Sizlar o'zbek <b>sizlar</b> . Sizlar Urganchd <b>ansizlar</b> .
7. You (p/i) are Uzbek. You (p/i) are from Namangan.	Siz o'zbek <b>siz</b> . Siz Namangond <b>ansiz</b> .
8. They are Uzbek. They are from Andijan.	Ular o'zbek. Ular Andijond <b>an</b> .

**7. Pretend you and your classmates are from Uzbekistan. Introduce yourself and your classmates to your friend in Uzbek. Use the model below and the map.**

**Model:**

Men o'zbek**man**. Men Toshkentdan**man**. Abbas o'zbek. U Samarqandd**an**.  
Doniyor va\* Aziza o'zbek. Ular Qarshidan.

\* "Va" means "and" in Uzbek. Its usage is basically the same as it is in English.

In Uzbek there are three basic words for where:

**Qayerda** = Where at

**Qayerdan** = Where from

**Qayerga** = Where to

This is because Uzbek is a fully declined language, like Latin or Russian. This means that our English prepositions (from, at, in, on, to, etc.) are generally represented by suffixes in Uzbek. These suffixes are normally attached directly to the end of the word they relate to. The **+da** in **qayerda** means “in/on/at.” The **+dan** in **qayerdan**, as seen above, means “from.” The **+ga** in **qayerga** means “to/towards.”

Where are you (s/f) from?

Siz qayerdانسiz?

Where is he (she/it) from?

U qayerdan?

Where are we from?

Biz qayerdanmiz?



**8. Listen to the following dialogues in Uzbek. Repeat after the speaker. Follow along in your workbook.**

1. A. I am from Tashkent.

Men Toshkentdanman.

Where are you (s/f) from?

Siz qayerdانسiz?

B. I am from Urgench.

Men Urganchdanman.

2. A. Khurshid is from Bukhara.

Xurshid Buxorodan.

Where is Otabek from?

Otabek qayerdan?

B. He is from Termez.

U Termizdan.

3. A. I am from Khiva.

Men Xivadanman.

Where are you (s/f) and Dono from?

Siz va Dono qayerdانسizlar?

B. We are from Shahrissabz.

Biz Shahrissabzdanmiz.

4. A. Anvar is from Ferghana.

Anvar Farg'onadan.

Where are Ravshan and Naima from?

Ravshan va Naima qayerdan?

B. They are from Qarshi.

Ular Qarshidan.

## 9. Role-play the dialogues above using the map of Uzbekistan.

In English a yes/no question is formed by changing the word order of the sentence. In Uzbek this is not the case; word order remains the same. Instead, the suffix **+mi** is attached to the very end of the final word of the sentence. The one exception is with the second-person (plural or singular, formal or informal) where the **+mi** precedes the pronominal suffix (**+san**, **+siz**, or **+sizlar**).\* So:

Am I Uzbek? = Men o'zbekman**mi**?

Are we Uzbek? = Biz o'zbekmiz**mi**?

Are you (s/f) Uzbek? = Siz o'zbek**misiz**?

Are you (p/f) Uzbek? = Sizlar o'zbek**misizlar**?

Are you (s/i) Uzbek? = Sen o'zbek**misan**?

Are you (p/i) Uzbek? = Siz o'zbek**misiz**?

Is he/she/it Uzbek? = U o'zbek**mi**?

Are they Uzbek? = Ular o'zbek**mi**?

The Uzbek word for "yes" is **ha**. The word for "no" is **yo'q**. Their use is similar to their English equivalents. To make a positive statement negative you begin the given sentence with **yo'q** and end it with the word **emas**, which means "not." Any necessary suffixes can be attached to **emas**.

\*This is not the case with verbs, where **+mi** always comes last.

Am I from Tashkent?

No, I am not.

Men Toshkentdanman**mi**?

Yo'q, men Toshkentdan emasman.

Are you (s/f) from Tashkent?

No, you (s/f) are not.

Siz Toshkentdan**misiz**?

Yo'q, siz Toshkentdan emassiz.

Are you (s/i) from Tashkent?

No, you (s/i) are not.

Sen Toshkentdan**misan**?

Yo'q, sen Toshkentdan emassan.

Is he/she/it from Tashkent?

No, he/she/it is not.

U Toshkentdan**mi**?

Yo'q, u Toshkentdan emas.

Are we from Tashkent?

No, we are not.

Biz Toshkentdan**mizmi**?

Yo'q, biz Toshkentdan emasmiz.

Are you (p/f) from Tashkent?

No, you (p/f) are not.

Sizlar Toshkentdan**misizlar**?

Yo'q, sizlar Toshkentdan emassizlar.

Are you (p/i) from Tashkent?

No, you (p/i) are not.

Siz Toshkentdan**misiz**?

Yo'q, siz Toshkentdan emassiz.

Are they from Tashkent?

No, they are not.

Ular Toshkentdan**mi**?

Yo'q, ular Toshkentdan emas.

## 10. Read the following dialogues and role-play them.

1. A. Are you from Uzbekistan?

A. Siz O'zbekistondan**misiz**?

B. Yes, I am.

B. Ha, O'zbekistondanman.

2. A. Are you from Bukhara?

A. Siz Buxorodan**misiz**?

B. No, I am not. I am from Samarqand.

B. Yo'q, men Buxorodan emasman. Men Samarqanddanman.

3. A. Is Odil from Uzbekistan?

A. Odil O'zbekistondan**mi**?

B. Yes, he is.

B. Ha, O'zbekistondan.

4. A. Are Otabek and Madina from Andijan?

A. Otabek va Madina Andijondan**mi**?

B. Yes, they are.

B. Ha, ular Andijondan.

A polite introduction will generally begin with the basic greeting as described in section one. While verbally greeting the individual you should place your right hand over your heart and bow slightly forward, this should last no more than two or three seconds. You then shake hands with the individual, and can proceed with asking their name. The Uzbek word for “name” is *ism* and the word for “what” is *nima*. The idea of “your (s/f)” is expressed by the possessive pronoun *sizning* and the possessive suffix (added onto whatever is being possessed) +*ingiz*. So, the phrase for “What is your name?” is “*Sizning ismingiz nima.*” If the person you are talking with is younger than or the same age as you, there is no real need for words like “Mr.” or “Mrs.” However, if the person is older than you, you should always try to use the Uzbek equivalents of these words. “Mr.” is equivalent to *aka*, which means “older brother”, and “Mrs.” is equivalent to *opa*, which means “older sister.” In English these words precede the last name of the person they refer to. In Uzbek it’s the exact opposite *aka* and *opa* follow the first name of the given individual. So Bob Smith is Mr. Smith in America, but Bob *aka* in Uzbekistan.



What is your name?  
My name is Sanjar.

Sizning ismingiz nima?  
Mening ismim Sanjar.

What is your name?  
My name is Khurshid.

Sizning ismingiz nima?  
Mening ismim Xurshid.

In Uzbek possessive pronouns consist of two parts. The first involves the personal pronoun followed by the suffix +*ning* (except with *men* and *sen* where it’s just +*ing*). The second is a possessive suffix attached to the end of whatever is being possessed. In the table below N represents the noun that is being possessed. If N ends in a vowel then the ‘i’ in parenthesis is not necessary (but the opposite is true for the third-person, you need the ‘s’ if N ends in a vowel, you don’t if it ends in a consonant. This is because vowel and consonant clusters are difficult for Uzbeks to pronounce. All of the below assume the object being possessed is single. If it is plural the plural suffix +*lar* will come in between N and the possessive suffix. Ularning kitobi vs. Ularning kitoblari = Their book vs. Their books.

I	Men	My	Mening N+(i)m
You (s/f)	Siz	Your	Sizning N+(i)ngiz
You (s/i)	Sen	Your	Sening N+(i)ng
He/She/It	U	His/Her/Its	Uning N+(s)i
We	Biz	Our	Bizning N+(i)miz
You (p/f)	Sizlar	Your	Sizlarning N+(i)ngiz
You (p/i)	Siz	Your	Sizning N+(i)ngiz
They	Ular	Their	Ularning N+(s)i



What is her name?  
Uning ismi nima?

Her name is Gulnora.  
Uning ismi Gulnora



What is his name?  
Uning ismi nima?

His name is Elyor.  
Uning ismi Elyor



**11. Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speaker.**

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. Good morning!               | Assalomu alaykum!                   |
| B. Good morning!               | Assalomu alaykum!                   |
| A. My name is Shohrukh.        | Mening ismim Shohrux.               |
| What is your name?             | Sizning ismingiz nima?              |
| B. My name is Jahongir.        | Mening ismim Jahongir.              |
| A. Nice to meet you, Jahongir. | Tanishgandan xursandman,* Jahongir. |
| B. You too, Shohrukh.          | Men ham,* Shohrux.                  |

\*“Tanishgandan xursandman” means “Nice to meet you.” “Ham” means “too” or “also.”



**12. Working in pairs or in small groups, look at the pictures and make up similar dialogues.**

The Uzbek verb for “to live” is *yasha-*. Like any Uzbek verb, it will always come at the very end of the sentence it’s in. In the present tense it is conjugated as follows.

I live. = Men yashay <b>man</b> .	We live. = Biz yashay <b>miz</b> .
You (s/f) live. = Siz yashays <b>iz</b> .	You (p/f) live. = Sizlar yashays <b>izlar</b> .
You (p/i) live. = Sen yashays <b>an</b> .	You (p/i) live. = Siz yashays <b>iz</b> .
He/She/It lives. = U yashay <b>di</b> .	They live. = Ular yashay <b>dilar</b> .

The **bold** endings are what conjugate the verb for person. They are the same for any Uzbek verb in the present or future (which are the same in Uzbek\*) tense. The present/future tense is represented by the ‘y’ in the middle of every verb. This will always be a ‘y’ for verbs that end in a vowel (like *yasha-*). If the verb ends in a consonant the ‘y’ will become an ‘a.’ To make a verb negative you add *-ma* directly to the root, so “to not live” is *yashama-*.

\*Except with the verb “to be,” which is only used in the future tense, never in the present.



**13. Listen to the following statements and repeat after the speaker.**

My name is Fotih.	His name is O’lmas.	Her name is Feruza.
Mening ismim Fotih.	Uning ismi O’lmas	Uning ismi Feruza.
I live in Tashkent.	He lives in Khiva.	She lives in Nukus.
Men Toshkentda yashayman.	U Xivada yashaydi.	U Nukusda yashaydi.
We live in Termez.		They live in Shahrizabz.
Biz Termizda yashaymiz.		Ular Shahrizabzda yashaydilar.

**14. Read the following sentences and then translate them into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. Otabek Qarshida yashaydi.
2. Siz Nukusda yashaysizmi? Ha, Nukusda yashayman.
3. Feruza Samarqandda yashamaydi.
4. Qayerda yashaysiz? Men Buxoroda yashayman.
5. Lola va Abbos qayerda yashaydilar? Ular Termizda yashaydilar.



**15. Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in your workbook. Working in pairs or in small groups, make up a similar dialogue.**

- A. Assalomu alaykum.
- B. Assalomu alaykum.
- A. Mening ismim Aziza. Sizning ismingiz nima?
- B. Mening ismim Javoxir.
- A. Tanishgandan xursandman, Javoxir.
- B. Men ham, Aziza.
- A. Men Toshkentda yashayman. Siz qayerda yashaysiz?
- B. Men Buxoroda yashayman.

**16. Imagine that you are new to the class. Ask your partner about the rest of the students (their names and where they live). Use the model below. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

**Model:**

- A. Uning ismi nima?
- B. Uning ismi Farhod.
- A. U qayerda yashaydi?
- B. U Urganchda yashaydi.

**17. What is the question? Read the answers below and reproduce the questions in Uzbek. Check your work with the answer key.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Yo'q, men Termizdan emasman. Men Samarqanddanman.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, men Buxoroda yashayman.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, u Xivadan.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, u Toshkentda yashaydi.
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Yo'q, u Qarshidan emas. U Shahrisabzdan.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, ismim Doniyor.
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Yo'q, u Ravshan aka emas.
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, men Andijondanman.



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

**1. Read the following sentences and translate them from English into Uzbek. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A. My name is Tanya. I am from Moscow.
- B. Do you live in Seattle? Yes.
- C. His name is Joe. He lives in America.
- D. We are from Canada.
- E. My name is Maurice. I am from Germany.
- F. His name is Bob. He lives in Boston.
- G. Her name is Susan. She lives in London.
- H. What is your name? My name is Tony.



**2. Pretend that you are at a party. Introduce yourself to other people and ask them their names, where they are from, and where they live. Work in pairs or in small groups. Use the model below.**

### Model:

- A. Salom, mening ismim Abbos. Sizning ismingiz nima?
- B. Salom, mening ismim Karimulla.
- A. Men O'zbekistondanman. Siz qayerdansiz?
- B. Men O'zbekistondanman.
- A. Men Farg'onada yashayman. Siz qayerda yashaysiz?
- B. Men Namangonda yashayman.

**3. Introduce your friend to your classmates. Use the model below.**

- Uning ismi Sanjar.
- U O'zbekistondan.
- U o'zbek.
- U Toshkentda yashaydi.

## Vocabulary List

Hello.	Assalomu alaykum.
Hello (response).	Vaalaykum assalom.
Hi.	Salom
How are you?	Qandaysiz?
Are you well?	Yaxshimisiz?
How are things going?	Ishlaringiz yaxshimi?
How are you doing?	Yaxshi yuribsizmi?
Fine/Well	Yaxshi
Thank you	Rahmat
You are welcome	Arzimaydi
Nice to meet you.	Tanishgandan xursandman.
My name is ...	Mening ismim...
I	Men
You (s/f)	Siz
You (s/i)	Sen
He/She/It	U
We	Biz
You (p/f)	Sizlar
You (p/i)	Siz
They	Ular
To live	Yasha-
Not	Emas
No	Yo'q
Yes	Ha
From	+dan
At/In/On	+da
To/Towards	+ga
Where are you from?	Siz qayerdانسiz?
What is your name?	Ismingiz nima?
Where do you live?	Siz qayerda yashaysiz?
My	Mening N+(i)m
Your (s/f)	Sizning N+(i)ngiz
Your (s/i)	Sening N+(i)ngiz
His/Her/Its	Uning N+(s)i
Our	Bizning N+(i)miz
Your (p/f)	Sizlarning N+laringiz
Your (p/i)	Sizning N+(i)ngiz
Their	Ularning N+lari

## ANSWER KEY

14.

1. Otabek lives in Qarshi.
2. Do you live in Nukus? Yes, I live in Nukus.
3. Feruza does not live in Samarqand.
4. Where do you live? I live in Bukhara.
5. Where do Lola and Abbos live? They live in Termez.

17. Your questions should be similar in grammatical form to those below.

1. Siz Termizdanmisiz?
2. Siz Buxoroda yashaysizmi?
3. U Xivadanmi?
4. U Toshkentda yashaydimi?
5. U Qarshidanmi?
6. Ismingiz Doniyormi?
7. U Ravshan akami?
8. Siz Andijondanmisiz?

### End of Lesson

- A. Mening ismim Tanya. Men Moskvadanman.
- B. Siz Sietlda yashaysizmi? Ha.
- C. Uning ismi Joe. U Amerikada yashaydi.
- D. Biz Kanadadanmiz.
- E. Mening ismim Maurice, men Germaniyadanman.
- F. Uning ismi Bob. U Bostonda yashaydi.
- G. Uning ismi Susan. U Londonda yashaydi.
- H. Sizning ismingiz nima? Mening ismim Tony.

## Lesson 2

### Living and Working

### Yashash va Ishlash

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Typical housing arrangements of most people living in Uzbekistan
- Using “or” in questions about living arrangements and professions
- The verb “to have” in the present tense
- Names of professions (singular and plural forms).

The general Uzbek term for house or home is *uy*. There are two basic kinds of homes in Uzbekistan: the modern apartment, and the traditional walled-in home with a courtyard. Apartments are similar to what we have in America, except that even the cheapest generally have a balcony. Apartments can be rented or owned. The more traditional walled-in homes, called *hovli* in Uzbek, are generally found in the old towns of Uzbek cities. A *hovli* consists of four tall, mud-brick walls surrounding a central courtyard. The rooms of the *hovli* are generally built into those walls and a gate opens up onto the outside street. The courtyard is normally filled with fruit trees, vegetables, herbs and flowers. Bare, dry earth is preferred over grass. The centerpiece of the courtyard is often a raised, metal platform with a table on top of it. These are called *karavot* or *so’ri* and are used as outdoor tables for eating and conversation. Most Uzbeks own their *hovli* and they are generally passed down from generation to generation within a family.



1. Look at the pictures below and listen to the words. Repeat the words after the speaker.



apartment  
kvartira



apartment building  
dom



room  
xona



house  
uy/hovli



military camp  
lashkargoh



tent  
palatka



barracks  
kazarma



hotel  
mehmonxona

**2. Match the Uzbek words on the left with their English equivalents on the right. Replay the audio from the previous section if necessary.**

Palatka	Hotel
Xona	Tent
Uy	Barracks
Kvartira	Room
Mehmonxona	Military Camp
Dom	House
Kazarma	Apartment
Lashkargoh	Apartment Building

**3. Read the following sentences and translate them into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. Abbos lashkargohda palatkada yashaydi.
2. Abdulla aka kichik\* kvartirada yashaydi.
3. Otabek va Muhabbat Buxoroda katta\* hovlida yashaydilar.
4. Odil mehmonxonada yashaydi.
5. Doniyor va Ahmad kazarmada yashaydilar.
6. Abbos va Xurshid bizning uyimizda yashaydilar.

\* "Katta" means big/large and "kichik" means small/little.



**4. Listen to the following dialogues and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in your workbook. Then, working in pairs or in small groups, make up similar dialogues.**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A. I live in a big house. Where do you live?<br>Men katta uyda yashayman. Siz qayerda yashaysiz?                                   | B. I live in a tent in a military camp.<br>Men lashkargohda palatkada yashayman. |
| 2. A. Farhod lives in the hotel. Where does Feruza live?<br>Farhod mehmonxonada yashaydi. Feruza qayerda yashaydi?                    | B. Feruza lives in an apartment building.<br>Feruza domda yashaydi.              |
| 3. A. We live in the barracks. Where do Muhammad and Nigora live?<br>Biz kazarmada yashaymiz. Muhammad va Nigora qayerda yashaydilar? | B. They live in the military camp.<br>Ular lashkargohda yashaydilar.             |

The Uzbek word for “or” is *yoki*. This word is used similarly to its English equivalent. So:

Do you live in a tent or in the barracks? = Siz palatkada yoki kazarmada yashaysizmi?

In the above example the +mi forms a question (we covered this in chapter one, section nine). A more informal way of asking the question would be: “Siz palatkada yashaysizmi, yoki kazarmadami?” For simplicity’s sake we have opted to use the more formal version in this text, however students should feel free to use either.

**5. Read the following dialogues and translate them into English. Check your translations with the answer key. Make up similar dialogues using the words below. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

1. A. Siz hovlida yoki kvartirada yashaysizmi?  
B. Men hovlida yashayman.
2. A. Ular mehmonxonada yoki domda yashaydilar?  
B. Ular domda yashaydilar.

**6. Compose choice questions using the model and the words below. Check your work with the answer key.**

**Model:** Siz palatkada yoki kazarmada yashaysizmi?

Siz	palatka/kazarma
Ular	mehmonxona/uy
U	dom/lashkargoh
Sen	kazarma/uy
Biz	kvartira/mehmonxona



**7. Listen to the speaker and circle the words you hear. Check your work with the answer key.**

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. barracks      | tent               |
| 2. house         | apartment building |
| 3. military camp | room               |
| 4. apartment     | hotel              |

In Uzbek there is no verb for “to have.” Instead, the noun that is being ‘had’ is possessed (see lesson one, section ten) and followed by the word **bor**, which means “exists.” So:

I have a name. = Mening ismim bor.  
 You have a house. = Sizning uyingiz bor.  
 He has a tent. = Uning palatkasi bor.

To make this negative, to say “I do not have,” you simply replace the word **bor** with the word **yo’q**. So:

I do not have an apartment. = Mening kvartiram yo’q.  
 You do not have a tent. = Sizning palatkangiz yo’q.  
 He does not have a **hovli**. = Uning hovlisi yo’q.

I have a house.	Mening uyim bor.
You (s/f) have a house.	Sizning uyingiz bor.
You (s/i) have a house.	Sening uying bor.
He/She has a house.	Uning uyi bor.
We have a house.	Bizning uyimiz bor.
You (p/f) have a house.	Sizlarning uyingiz bor.
You (p/i) have a house.	Sizning uyingiz bor.
They have a house.	Ularning uyi bor.



**8. Listen to the following sentences and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in your workbook.**

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I have a house in Tashkent.                    | Toshkentda mening uyim bor.           |
| 2. We have an apartment in an apartment building. | Domda bizning kvartiramiz bor.        |
| 3. Anvar has an apartment in Samarqand.           | Samarqandda Anvarning kvartirasi bor. |
| 4. Sanjar and Maryam have their house in Khiva.   | Xivada Sanjar va Maryamning uyi bor.  |

**9. Make up sentences using the correct form of the verb “to have.”**

**Model:** Mening uyim bor.

Men	uy	Bor
Siz	kvartira	
Sen		
U		
Biz	palatka	
Sizlar		
Ular		

The economy of Uzbekistan is not particularly robust, and as such, it can be difficult for Uzbeks to find work. As a result many are forced to drive private taxis, to sell what they can grow at home in the bazaars, or worse, to serve as day-laborers (in Uzbek *mardikor*). Men are generally the breadwinners of the household in Uzbekistan, and women generally take care of the home. When women do work it is most often as a nurse or teacher (that being said, women can occasionally be found in many other places of employment).



**10. Listen to the new vocabulary related to professions and repeat after the speaker.**

Profession	Kasb
Doctor	Vrach
Nurse	Hamshira
Laborer	Ishchi
Teacher	O'qituvchi
Student	Talaba
Soldier	Soldat
Mechanic	Mexanik
Farmer	Dehqon
Police Officer	Militsiyoner
Waitress	Ofitsiantka*
Waiter	Ofitsiant*
Interpreter	Tarjimon

\*The initial 'o' in these words is pronounced as an 'a'. They are Russian in origin.

**11. Circle the more likely profession of the two choices under the photo.**



**Hamshirami yoki o'qituvchimi?**



**Dehqonmi yoki ofitsiantmi?**



Ofitsiantkami yoki vrachmi?



Soldatmi yoki tarjimonmi?

12. Match the Uzbek words on the right with their English equivalents on the left. Check your work with the answer key.

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Profession      | A. Ofitsiantka  |
| 2. Doctor          | B. Dehqon       |
| 3. Nurse           | C. Tarjimon     |
| 4. Laborer         | D. Kasb         |
| 5. Teacher         | E. Hamshira     |
| 6. Student         | F. Militsiyoner |
| 7. Soldier         | G. Vrach        |
| 8. Mechanic        | H. Ishchi       |
| 9. Farmer          | I. Talaba       |
| 10. Police Officer | J. Soldat       |
| 11. Waitress       | K. Mexanik      |
| 12. Interpreter    | L. O'qituvchi   |

To pluralize any noun in Uzbek you simply add the plural suffix **+lar** to it. It is generally attached directly to the noun it is pluralizing. Possessive suffixes and prepositional suffixes (cases) follow it. So:

- Name = Ism  
Names = Ismlar  
My Names = Ismlarim  
In My Names = Ismlarimda = Ism+lar+im+da = Name+s+my+in

Agglutination (word combination) in Uzbek almost always works this way (noun+plural+possessive+case). Try to keep to this order as much as possible.



13. Listen to the plural form of nouns related to the names of professions, and repeat after the speaker.

**Profession**

Kasb

**Doctor**

Vrach

**Nurse**

Hamshira

**Laborer**

Ishchi

**Teacher**

O'qituvchi

**Student**

Talaba

**Soldier**

Soldat

**Mechanic**

Mexanik

**Farmer**

Dehqon

**Police officer**

Militsiyoner

**Waitress**

Ofitsiantka

**Interpreter**

Tarjimon

**Professions**

Kasblar

**Doctors**

Vrachlar

**Nurses**

Hamshiralari

**Laborers**

Ishchilar

**Teachers**

O'qituvchilar

**Students**

Talabalar

**Soldiers**

Soldatlar

**Mechanics**

Mexaniklar

**Farmers**

dehqonlar

**Police officers**

Militsiyonerlar

**Waitresses**

Ofitsiantkalar

**Interpreters**

Tarjimonlar



14. Listen to the speaker and put a circle around each word you hear. Replay the audio as many times as you need. Check your answers with the answer key.

- A. mechanic / farmer.
- B. teachers / doctors.
- C. interpreter / student.
- D. police officers / soldiers.



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

**1. Give a brief introduction of yourself, listing your name, where you are from, where you live, and what your occupation is in Uzbek.**

**Model:** Mening ismim Muhammad. Men o'zbekman. Men O'zbekistondanman.  
Men Toshkentda yashayman. Men o'qituvchiman. Men kvartirada yashayman.



**2. Listen to the recording and circle all the professions you hear. Check the answer key.**

A. 1. ofitsiantka  
2. militsiyoner  
3. tarjimon

B. 1. hamshira  
2. o'qituvchi  
3. dehqon

C. 1. vrach  
2. hamshira  
3. talaba

**3. Reproduce the questions to the following answers. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Mening ismim Feruz.

2. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Men O'zbekistondanman.

3. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, Samarqandda yashayman.

4. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Mening hovlim yo'q. Mening kvartiram bor.

5. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, men mexanikman.

## Vocabulary List

Apartment building	Dom
Barracks	Kazarma
Military Camp	Lashkargoh
House	Uy/Hovli
Tent	Palatka
Room	Xona
Big	Katta
Small	Kichik
Profession	Kasb
Farmer	Dehqon
Doctor	Vrach
Nurse	Hamshira
Laborer	Ishchi
Teacher	O'qituvchi
Student	Talaba
Soldier	Soldat
Mechanic	Mexanik
Waitress	Ofitsiantka
Waiter	Ofitsiant
Interpreter	Tarjimon
Police officer	Militsiyoner
Exists	Bor
Doesn't Exist	Yo'q

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 3

1. Abbos lives in a tent at the military camp.
2. Mr. Abdullah lives in a small apartment.
3. Otabek and Muhabbat live in a big house in Bukhara.
4. Odil lives in a hotel.
5. Doniyor and Ahmad live in the barracks.
6. Abbos and Xurshid live in our house.

### Exercise 5

1. A. Do you live in a house or in an apartment?  
B. I live in a house.
2. A. Do they live in a hotel or in an apartment building?  
B. They live in an apartment building.

### Exercise 6.

Siz palatkada yoki kazarmada yashaysizmi?  
Ular mehmonxonada yoki uyda yashaydilar?  
U domda yoki lashkargohda yashaydimi?  
Sen kazarmada yoki uyda yashaysanmi?  
Biz kvartirada yoki mehmonxonada yashaymizmi?

### Exercise 7

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. palatka    | tent          |
| 2. uy         | house         |
| 3. lashkargoh | military camp |
| 4. mehmonxona | hotel         |

### Exercise 12

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Profession      | D. Kasb         |
| 2. Doctor          | G. Vrach        |
| 3. Nurse           | E. Hamshira     |
| 4. Laborer         | H. Ishchi       |
| 5. Teacher         | L. O'qituvchi   |
| 6. Student         | I. Talaba       |
| 7. Soldier         | J. Soldat       |
| 8. Mechanic        | K. Mexanik      |
| 9. Farmer          | B. Dehqon       |
| 10. Police Officer | F. Militsiyoner |

11. Waitress            A. Ofitsiantka  
12. Interpreter        C. Tarjimon

#### **Exercise 14**

- A. farmer            dehqon  
B. teachers          o'qituvchilar  
C. interpreter        tarjimon  
D. soldiers          soldatlar

#### **End of Lesson Exercise 2**

- A. 3 tarjimon        interpreter  
B. 2 o'qituvchi     teacher  
C. 3 talaba          student

#### **End of Lesson Exercise 3**

1. Ismingiz nima?
2. Siz qayerdansiz?
3. Siz Samarqandda yashaysizmi?
4. Sizning hovlingiz yoki kvartirangiz bormi?
5. Siz mexanikmisiz?

### Lesson 3

## Days of the Week, Numbers, Ages of People

### Haftaning Kunlari, Raqamlar va Yoshning Ifodalanishi

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Days of the week
- Numbers from 0 to 100
- How to understand and respond to questions about what day it is
- How to find out somebody's age and tell how old you are.



**1. Listen to the days of the week and repeat them after the speaker.**

Monday	Dushanba
Tuesday	Seshanba
Wednesday	Chorshanba
Thursday	Payshanba
Friday	Juma
Saturday	Shanba
Sunday	Yakshanba



- Unlike English, the days of the week are not capitalized in Uzbek.
- In Uzbek the word for “day” is *kun*.
- The word for “today” is *bugun*.
- And the word for “which” is *qaysi*. So:

What day is today? = Bugun qaysi kun?  
Today is Thursday. = Bugun payshanba.

-Normally the suffix *+da* (as seen in the last two lessons) is used to express the idea of in/on/at. This is not the case with most expressions of time. One does not say *yakshanbada* for “on Sunday.” Instead one says *yakshanba kuni* with no *+da* at all. The *+i* following *kun* is the third person possessive suffix discussed in the last section. All of the days of the week follow this pattern.

**Read the days of the week several times, practicing pronunciation. Replay the audio if necessary.**



**2. Listen to the following dialogues and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook. Role-play the dialogues using the names of the other days of the week. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

yakshanba      dushanba      seshanba      payshanba      shanba      chorshanba      juma

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. What day is it today? | Bugun qaysi kun?      |
| Today is Monday.         | Bugun dushanba.       |
| 2. Is today Monday?      | Bugun dushanbami?     |
| Yes, today is Monday.    | Ha, bugun dushanba.   |
| 3. Is today Monday?      | Bugun dushanbami?     |
| No, today is Tuesday.    | Yo'q, bugun seshanba. |

-The Uzbek word for “telephone” is *telefon*.  
 -The Uzbek word for number is *raqam*. The Russian word *nomer* is also frequently used.  
 -The word for “what” with regard to numbers is *necha*. Note: this word also means “how many.”  
 -Uzbek phone numbers can be either six or seven digits long. They are given in either XXX-XX-XX or XX-XX-XX form. So 123-45-67 would be read “one hundred and twenty three, forty five, sixty seven.”



**3. Listen to the pronunciations and read the numbers from 0 to 10.**

<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>10</b>
Nol	Bir	Ikki	Uch	To'rt	Besh	Olti	Yetti	Sakkiz	To'qqiz	O'n

**4. Practice using the numbers. Work with a partner and tell them in Uzbek your home and work telephone numbers, house numbers, etc.**

**5. Read the following dialogue. Pay attention to the numbers.**

- |                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. What is your telephone number?  | Telefon raqamingiz necha? |
| B. My telephone number is 45-67-93 | Telefon raqamim 45-67-93. |
| A. What is your house number?      | Uy raqamingiz necha?      |
| B. My house number is 10456.       | Uy raqamim 10456.         |

**6. Role-play the dialogue with a partner using exercise 5 as a model. Pretend one of you is a receptionist who wants to know your name, your telephone number, and your house number. Ask each other questions and use as many numbers in your answers as you can.**



**7. Listen to the sentences and write down the missing numbers you hear. Check your work with the answer key.**

**Model:** Telefon raqamim 567\_8\_\_4.

**1. Telefon raqamim 67\_\_\_\_653.**

**2. Telefon raqamim 432\_\_\_\_01.**

**3. Telefon raqamim 89645\_\_\_\_.**

**4. Telefon raqamim 4\_\_\_\_0692.**

**5. Telefon raqamim 978\_\_\_\_645.**

The numbers 11-19 are very simple in Uzbek. You simply say the word for ten, *o'n*, followed by one, two, three, etc. for eleven, twelve, thirteen, etc.



**8. Listen as the speaker says the numbers 11 to 19. Repeat after the speaker.**

11	eleven	o'n bir
12	twelve	o'n ikki
13	thirteen	o'n uch
14	fourteen	o'n to'rt
15	fifteen	o'n besh
16	sixteen	o'n olti
17	seventeen	o'n yetti
18	eighteen	o'n sakkiz
19	nineteen	o'n to'qqiz

**9. Read the following numbers in Uzbek:**

**11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 12, 14, 16, 18**

The Uzbek word for twenty is *yigirma*. The words for 21-29 work the same as they do for 11-19.

20	twenty	<b>yigirma</b>
21	twenty-one	<b>yigirma bir</b>
22	twenty-two	<b>yigirma ikki</b>
23	twenty-three	<b>yigirma uch</b>
24	twenty-four	<b>yigirma to'rt</b>
25	twenty-five	<b>yigirma besh</b>

26	twenty-six	<b>yigirma olti</b>
27	twenty-seven	<b>yigirma yetti</b>
28	twenty-eight	<b>yigirma sakkiz</b>
29	twenty-nine	<b>yigirma to'qqiz</b>

**10. Read the following texts and translate them into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. Mening ismim Sayyora. Men Toshkentda yashayman. Men ofitsiantkaman. Mening hovlim bor. Mening uy raqamim yigirma bir.
2. Odil soldat. U domda yashaydi. Uning uy raqami yigirma besh.
3. Uning ismi Nafisa. U o'qituvchi. U hovlida yashaydi. Uning uy raqami o'n olti.
4. Samarqandda Otabek va Nasibaning uyi bor. Ularning uy raqami o'n to'rt..



**11. Listen to the speaker and circle the number you hear in each row.**

- |           |          |          |           |          |           |
|-----------|----------|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| <b>A.</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>21</b> |
| <b>B.</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>22</b> |
| <b>C.</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>23</b> |
| <b>D.</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>24</b> |
| <b>E.</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>25</b> |
| <b>F.</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>16</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>26</b> |
| <b>G.</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>17</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>27</b> |
| <b>H.</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>18</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>28</b> |
| <b>I.</b> | <b>9</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>19</b> | <b>-</b> | <b>29</b> |

The numbers from 30 up continue to work the same as from 11 to 29. The only thing new to learn are the ten's themselves.



**12. Listen to the next set of numbers. Repeat after the speaker.**

30	thirty	o'ttiz
40	forty	qirq
50	fifty	ellik
60	sixty	oltmish
70	seventy	yetmish
80	eighty	sakson
90	ninety	to'qson
100	one hundred	yuz

**13. Read the following numbers in Uzbek.**

**30, 31, 40, 42, 50, 53, 60, 64, 70, 75, 80, 86, 90, 97, 100.**

The Uzbek word for age is *yosh*. You ask how old someone is by saying “what age are you at.” In Uzbek this will be: *siz necha yoshdasiz*. A good response to this could be: *men yigirma to’rt yoshdaman*, or “I am at the age twenty four.”



**14. Listen to several short exchanges asking about age. Repeat after the speaker.**

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. A. How old are you?     | Siz necha yoshdasiz?           |
| B. I am 32 years old.      | Men o’ttiz ikki yoshdaman.     |
| 2. A. How old is he?       | U necha yoshda?                |
| B. He is 11.               | U o’n bir yoshda.              |
| 3. A. How old is she?      | U necha yoshda?                |
| B. She is 86 years old.    | U sakson olti yoshda.          |
| 4. A. Is she 34 years old? | U o’ttiz to’rt yoshdami?       |
| B. No, she is 35.          | Yo’q, u o’ttiz besh yoshda.    |
| 5. A. Are you 21?          | Siz yigirma bir yoshdamisiz?   |
| B. Yes, I am 21.           | Ha, men yigirma bir yoshdaman. |
| 6. A. What is your age?    | Siz necha yoshdasiz?           |
| B. I am 47.                | Men qirq yetti yoshdaman.      |

**15. Tell your classmates in Uzbek how old you are and ask them about their age.**



**16. Listen and match the age with the name. Check your work with the answer key.**

<b>Shirin</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Ne’mat</b>	<b>72</b>
<b>Muhammad</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Jahongir</b>	<b>43</b>



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

### 1. Translate the following statements into English. Check your work with the answer key.

A. Salom, mening ismim Abbos. Men yigirma olti yoshdaman. Men militsiyonerman.

B. Uning ismi Doniyor. U qirq yoshda. U soldat.

C. Uning ismi Rayhon. U qirq to'rt yoshda. U o'qituvchi.

### 2. Recite the following in Uzbek.

Ask what day it is.

Say what day it is today.

Ask someone's age.

Say how old you are.

## Vocabulary List

Day	Kun
Today	Bugun
Year	Yil
Monday	Dushanba
Tuesday	Seshanba
Wednesday	Chorshanba
Thursday	Payshanba
Friday	Juma
Saturday	Shanba
Sunday	Yakshanba
Telephone	Telefon
Number	Raqam
Age	Yosh
How Many	Necha
Which	Qaysi
How old are you?	Siz necha yoshdasiz?
What day is it today?	Bugun qaysi kun?
Today is Monday.	Bugun dushanba.
I am 25 years old.	Men yigirma besh yoshdaman.
0 zero	nol
1 one	bir
2 two	ikki
3 three	uch
4 four	to'rt
5 five	besh
6 six	olti
7 seven	yetti
8 eight	sakkiz
9 nine	to'qqiz
10 ten	o'n
11 eleven	o'n bir
12 twelve	o'n ikki
13 thirteen	o'n uch
14 fourteen	o'n to'rt
15 fifteen	o'n besh
16 sixteen	o'n olti
17 seventeen	o'n yetti
18 eighteen	o'n sakkiz
19 nineteen	o'n to'qqiz
20 twenty	yigirma
21 twenty-one	yigirma bir
22 twenty-two	yigirma ikki
23 twenty-three	yigirma uch
24 twenty-four	yigirma to'rt

25	twenty-five	yigirma besh
26	twenty-six	yigirma olti
27	twenty-seven	yigirma yetti
28	twenty-eight	yigirma sakkiz
29	twenty-nine	yigirma to'qqiz
30	thirty	o'ttiz
40	forty	qirq
50	fifty	ellik
60	sixty	oltmish
70	seventy	yetmish
80	eighty	sakson
90	ninety	to'qson
100	one hundred	yuz

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 7

1. 4
2. 5
3. 0
4. 3
5. 2

### Exercise 10

1. My name is Sayyora. I live in Tashkent. I am a waitress. I have a house. My house number is 21.
2. Odil is a soldier. He lives in an apartment building. His apartment number is 25.
3. Her name is Nafisa. She is a teacher. She lives in a house. Her house number is 16.
4. Otabek and Nasiba have a house in Samarqand. Their house number is 14.

### Exercise 11

- A. 10
- B. 12
- C. 3
- D. 24
- E. 5
- F. 16
- G. 27
- H. 18
- I. 29

### Exercise 16

Shirin is 52 years old.

How old is Ne'mat?

He is 43.

Muhammad is 72 years old.

Is Jahongir 31 years old?

No, he is 29.

Shirin ellik besh yoshda.

Ne'mat necha yoshda?

U qirq uch yoshda.

Muhammad yetmish ikki yoshda.

Jahongir o'ttiz bir yoshdami?

Yo'q, u yigirma to'qqiz yoshda.

### End of Lesson Exercise 1

A. Hi, my name is Abbos. I am 26 years old. I am a police officer.

Salom, mening ismim Abbos. Men yigirma olti yoshdaman. Men militsiyonerman.

B. His name is Doniyor. He is 40. He is a soldier.

Uning ismi Doniyor. U qirq yoshda. U soldat.

C. Her name is Rayhon. She is 44. She is a teacher.

Uning ismi Rayhon. U qirq to'rt yoshda. U o'qituvchi.

## Lesson 4

### Daily Activities

### Kundalik Ishlar

This lesson will introduce you to:

- How to ask for and tell time
- Typical daily activities in Uzbekistan
- The verbs “to go,” “to study,” “to play,” “to work,” “to watch,” “to read,” “to eat,” and “to get up”
- The past tense of the verbs.

-In Uzbek the word for hour, clock and o'clock is *soat*.

-We learned the numbers in the last lesson.

-Only one more word is necessary to tell basic time: *bo'ldi*. This word means “became” but is best translated as “is” when talking about time. So:

1) It is **HOUR** o'clock = Soat **HOUR** bo'ldi.

As ever, things do get more complex:

2) It is **MINUTE** past **HOUR** = Soat **HOUR**dan **MINUTE** o'tdi.

3) It is **MINUTE** till **HOUR** = Soat **MINUTE**ta kam **HOUR** bo'ldi.

So:

1) It is **eight** o'clock. – Soat **sakkiz** bo'ldi.

2) It is **ten** past **eleven**. = Soat **o'n birdan o'nta** o'tdi.

3) It is **seven** till **eight**. = Soat **yettita** kam **sakkiz** bo'ldi.

For now, it is not important that you know what every word in the above phrases mean. Just memorize them as set forms. #2 is used if the minutes are less than 30. #3 is used if they are more than thirty. And #1 is used when the minutes are zero. If the minutes are thirty the expression is:

4) Soat **HOUR** yarim bo'ldi. The word *yarim* means half and should be memorized. So:

4) It is **ten thirty**. = Soat **o'n yarim** bo'ldi.

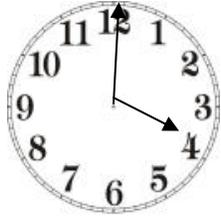
-To ask the time you use #1 and replace **HOUR** with *necha*, the question word we learned in the last lesson.

-To indicate AM/PM in Uzbek you begin the time phrase with **ertalab** if it's between 0400 and 1200, **kunduzi** if it's between 1200 and 1700, **kechqurun** if it's between 1700 and 2200, and **kechasi** if it's between 2200 and 0400.

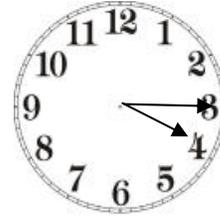
-The Uzbek question word for ‘when’ is *qachon*.



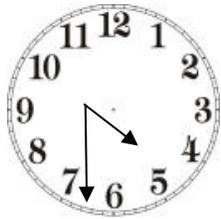
1. Listen as the speaker tells time in Uzbek. Repeat after the speaker.



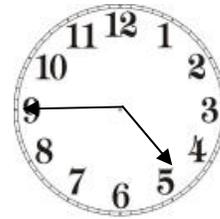
What time is it? It is four o'clock PM.  
Soat necha bo'ldi? Kunduzi soat to'rt bo'ldi.



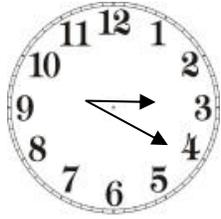
What time is it? It is four fifteen.  
Soat necha bo'ldi? Soat to'rt dan o'n beshta o'tdi.



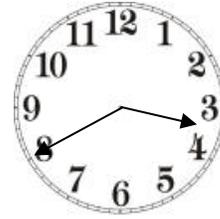
What time is it? It is four thirty.  
Soat necha bo'ldi? Soat to'rt yarim bo'ldi.



What time is it? It is four forty-five AM.  
Soat necha bo'ldi? Ertalab soat o'n beshta kam besh bo'ldi.



What time is it? It is three twenty AM.  
Soat necha bo'ldi? Kechasi soat uchdan yigirmata o'tdi.



What time is it? It is three forty.  
Soat necha bo'ldi? Soat yigirmata kam to'rt bo'ldi.

2. What time is it? Fill in the clock faces with the correct times according to how they are listed in Uzbek below. Check the answer key.

- A. Soat uch yarim bo'ldi.
- B. Soat o'n beshta kam to'qqiz bo'ldi.
- C. Soat oltidan o'nta o'tdi.
- D. Soat to'qqiz bo'ldi.

- E. Soat o'n bir yarim bo'ldi.
- F. Soat beshta kam bir bo'ldi.
- G. Soat o'n ikki bo'ldi.
- H. Soat to'rt dan o'n beshta o'tdi.

A.



B.



C.



D.



E.



F.



G.



H.



3. Listen to the following exchanges and identify the clock time mentioned in each. Check your work with the answer key.

A. 8:15 - 9:00

B. 9:50 - 9:15

C. 5:10 - 8:50

D. 4:13 - 4:30

4. Using the times listed, compose dialogues according to the model below. Work in pairs or in small groups.

**Model:** A. - Soat necha bo'ldi?

B. - Soat ikki bo'ldi.

8:00 am, 7:15 am, 10:30 am, 2:10 pm, 4:45 pm, 6:50 pm, 12:00, 11:05

### The present tense in Uzbek:

- We learned how to conjugate the verb “to live” in the future/present tense in lesson two.
  - All Uzbek verbs conjugate this way; there is no such thing as an irregular verb in Uzbek.
- For review:

VERB-**a** (man, siz, san, di, miz, sizlar, siz, dilar)

- The **-a** turns into a **-y** when attached to a VERB ending in a vowel.
- To make any verb negative you simply add **-ma** directly to the stem itself.
- The present tense is the same as the future tense in Uzbek, so “I will go” is identical to “I go.”
- Some new verbs to learn:

to go = **bor-** to study/to learn = **o’qi-** to work = **ishla-** to see = **ko’r-** to eat = **ye-\***  
to leave = **ket-** to play = **o’yna-** to get/stand up = **tur-**

\* This verb requires an object (pizza, cake, whatever). If there isn’t one, use **ovqatlan-** instead.

I go	Boraman	I study	O’qiyman
You (s/f) go	Borasiz	You (s/f) study	O’qiysiz
You (s/i) go	Borasan	You (s/i) study	O’qiysan
He goes	Boradi	He studies	O’qiydi
We go	Boramiz	We study	O’qiyimiz
You (p/f) go	Borasizlar	You (p/f) study	O’qiysizlar
You (p/i) go	Borasiz	You (p/i) study	O’qiysiz
They go	Boradilar	They study	O’qiydilar
I work	Ishlayman	I see	Ko’raman
You (s/f) work	Ishlaysiz	You (s/f) see	Ko’rasiz
You (s/i) work	Ishlaysan	You (s/i) see	Ko’rasan
He works	Ishlaydi	He sees	Ko’radi
We work	Ishlaymiz	We see	Ko’ramiz
You (p/f) work	Ishlaysizlar	You (p/f) see	Ko’rasizlar
You (p/i) work	Ishlaysiz	You (p/i) see	Ko’rasiz
They work	Ishlaydilar	They see	Ko’radilar
I eat	Yeyman	I leave	Ketaman
You (s/f) eat	Yeysiz	You (s/f) leave	Ketasiz
You (s/i) eat	Yeysan	You (s/i) leave	Ketasan
He eats	Yeydi	He leaves	Ketadi
We eat	Yeymiz	We leave	Ketamiz
You (p/f) eat	Yeysizlar	You (p/f) leave	Ketasizlar
You (p/i) eat	Yeysiz	You (p/i) leave	Ketasiz
They eat	Yeydilar	They leave	Ketadilar

I play	O'ynayman	I get up	Turaman
You (s/f) play	O'ynaysiz	You (s/f) get up	Turasiz
You (s/i) play	O'ynaysan	You (s/i) get up	Turasan
He plays	O'ynaydi	He gets up	Turadi
We play	O'ynaymiz	We get up	Turamiz
You (p/f) play	O'ynaysizlar	You (p/f)	Turasizlar
You (p/i) play	O'ynaysiz	You (p/i) get up	Turasiz
They play	O'ynaydilar	They get up	Turadilar

### **The verb 'to be' in the future tense:**

As mentioned in chapter one the Uzbek verb for 'to be' is the only irregular verb in the Uzbek language. This is largely because it has three separate forms for the future, present and past tenses, whereas every other verb is identical in the future and present forms and merely conjugates differently in the past tense. We discussed the present tense of 'to be' in chapter one. Here we will discuss the future tense. The future tense of 'to be' is actually the easiest of the three forms, because it conjugates just like the above verbs. Its root is **bo'l-**. So:

I will be a student. = ***Men talaba bo'laman.***

He will not be a student. = ***U talaba bo'lmaydi.***

You will be a student. = ***Siz talaba bo'lasiz.***

I am a student. = ***Men talabaman.***

He isn't a student. = ***U talaba emas.***

You are a student. = ***Siz talabasisiz.***

New vocabulary words:

basketball = ***basketbol***

market = ***bozor***

school = ***maktab***

hospital = ***kasalxona***

soccer = ***futbol***

food = ***ovqat***

book = ***kitob***

television = ***televizor***

girl = ***qiz bola***

boy = ***o'g'il bola***

woman = ***ayol kishi***

man = ***erkak kishi***



5. Listen to the short statements that describe each activity in the pictures below. Repeat after the speaker. Pay attention to new verbs and other new vocabulary.



They play basketball.  
**Ular basketbol o'ynaydilar.**



She goes to the market.  
**U bozorga boradi.**



They study at school.  
**Ular maktabda o'qiydilar.**



She works in the hospital.  
**U kasalxonada ishlaydi.**



He plays soccer.  
**U futbol o'ynaydi.**



The girl eats food.  
**Qiz bola ovqat yeydi.**

As mentioned in previous chapters, Uzbek is a fully declined language. Basically, this means that most prepositions in English (at, on, in to, from, etc.) are expressed via suffixes in Uzbek. The suffixes are called 'cases.' There are six of these cases in Uzbek (nominative, accusative, genitive, ablative, dative and locative).

**-Nominative:** This indicates the subject of a sentence and is very easy to learn. This is because the nominative case has no form; it is just the root word by itself with no changes. In the sentence *men maktabga boraman* (“I go to school”) *men* (‘I’) is in the nominative case and is identical to the original word, *men*. The nominative case always works this way, and as such the student can effectively ignore it.

**-Accusative:** This indicates a definite, direct object and takes the form *+ni*. In the sentence “Abbos eats the apple” ‘apple’ is both definite and a direct object, so you would use the accusative case in the Uzbek version. In the sentence “Abbos eats an apple” ‘apple’ is a direct object but isn’t definite, so no accusative case. This explains the difference between the two Uzbek sentences *Abbos olma yeydi* and *Abbos olmani yeydi*.<sup>\*</sup> Any object using a preposition is called a “prepositional object,” so you wouldn’t use this case for them either.  
<sup>\*</sup> “Olma” means “apple.” The first of these two sentences could also be translated as “Abbos eats apples.”

**-Genitive:** This indicates a possessive relationship (see lesson one, section ten) and takes the form *+ning*. It is attached to the noun that is possessive. In most instances the genitive case requires a possessive suffix to be attached to the possessed noun. This is detailed in the table at the end of lesson one, section ten. As a further example: “She is my girl.” = *U mening qizim*. “The girl’s name is Gulnora.” = *Qizning ismi Gulnora*.

**-Ablative:** This translates roughly to the English preposition ‘from’ and takes the form *+dan*. As an example: “He is from America.” = *U Amerikadan*.

**-Dative:** This translates roughly to the English ‘to’ and takes the form *+ga*. As an example: “I go to school” = *Men maktabga boraman*. “You go (to) home.” = *Siz uyga borasiz*.

**-Locative:** This can be translated as any of the English ‘at,’ ‘on’ or ‘in.’ It takes the form *+da*. For example: “I will go at three o’clock.” = *Men soat uchda boraman*. “He is at the school.” = *U maktabda*.

New vocabulary words:

morning = *ertalab*<sup>\*</sup>

afternoon = *tushdan keyin*<sup>\*</sup>

evening = *kechqurun*<sup>\*</sup>

everyday = *har kuni*<sup>\*</sup>

breakfast = *nonushta*<sup>\*\*</sup>

lunch = *tushki ovqat*<sup>\*\*\*</sup>

to eat dinner = *kechki ovqat*

work = *ish*

class = *dars*

to do = *qil-*

after = *keyin*

yesterday = *kecha*<sup>\*</sup>

<sup>\*</sup> Like the days of the week these phrases do not require the locative case, the idea of ‘in’ or ‘on’ is inherent in their meanings.

<sup>\*\*</sup> Uzbeks say “I do breakfast,” not “I eat breakfast.”

<sup>\*\*\*</sup> The Russian word “obed” is also frequently used.

<sup>\*\*\*\*</sup> The previous word must be in the ablative case, as in the word for “afternoon,” which is literally “after noon.”



**6. Listen to the following statements in Uzbek and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook. Replay the audio if necessary.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. The boy goes to school at 7:30.             | O'g'il bola soat yetti yarimda maktabga boradi. |
| B. He eats at seven o'clock.                   | U soat yettida ovqatlanadi.                     |
| C. When does she watch television?             | U qachon televizor ko'radi?                     |
| D. The girl studies at home in the afternoon.  | Qiz bola tushdan keyin uyda o'qiydi.            |
| E. Muhabbat goes to the market in the morning. | Muhabbat ertalab bozorga boradi.                |
| F. Otabek plays soccer on Friday.              | Otabek juma kuni futbol o'ynaydi.               |
| G. I get up at 7:00.                           | Men soat yettida turaman.                       |

**7. Match the following sentences with the pictures below. Check your answers with the answer key.**

1. Men soat to'qqiz yarimda maktabga boraman.
2. Ular soat yettida nonushta qiladilar.
3. Biz ertalab o'qiydiz.
4. U kechqurun kitob o'qiydi.



A # \_\_\_\_\_



B # \_\_\_\_\_



C # \_\_\_\_\_



D # \_\_\_\_\_

**8. Read the following text and answer the questions below in complete sentences in Uzbek. If you have any difficulty you may go to the answer key to check the text or the questions in English. Check your answers to the questions with the answer key.**

Bobur talaba. U maktabda o'qiydi. Har kuni soat yettidan o'n beshta o'tganda turadi.\* Soat yetti yarimda nonushta qiladi. Soat sakkizda maktabga ketadi. Maktabdan keyin futbol o'ynaydi. Kechqurunlari kitob o'qiydi va televizor ko'radi. Bobur shanba va yakshanba kunlari o'qimaydi.

\*Personal pronouns like u and men are not required in Uzbek, especially after they've already been mentioned once.

1. Bobur o'qituvchimi?
2. U qayerda o'qiydi?
3. Soat yettidan o'n beshta o'tganda nima qiladi?
4. Qachon nonushta qiladi?
5. Qachon maktabga ketadi?
6. Qachon basketbol o'ynaydi?
7. Kechqurun nima qiladi?
8. Shanba va yakshanba kunlari o'qiydimi?

**9. Rearrange the following statements into a logical order for a daily schedule. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. Men tushki ovqatni yeyman.
2. Men televizor ko'raman.
3. Men maktabga boraman.
4. Men kechki ovqatni yeyman.
5. Men basketbol o'ynayman.
6. Men nonushta qilaman.
7. Men uyda o'qiyman.

**10. Tell your partner about your daily schedule. Use the words and word combinations given below.**

har kuni                      tur-                      nonushta qil-                      ishla-                      obed qil-  
basketbol o'yna-      bozorga bor-                      kitob o'qi-                      televizor ko'r-                      kechqurun



**11. Listen to the five short statements. Circle the English statement that is the equivalent of each Uzbek statement you hear. Replay the audio as many times as you need.**

1. A. I play soccer after school.  
B. I play soccer after dinner.  
C. I play soccer after work.
2. A. She goes to the market in the evening.  
B. She goes to the market in the afternoon.  
C. She goes to the market in the morning.
3. A. I go to work in the morning.  
B. I go to school in the morning.  
C. I go to the market in the morning.
4. A. I study at home on Saturday.  
B. I play soccer at home on Saturday.  
C. I eat breakfast at home on Saturday.
5. A. He watches television in the afternoon.  
B. He watches television in the evening.  
C. He watches television in the morning.

**The past tense in Uzbek:**

As with the present/future tense in Uzbek, all simple past tense forms are regular. There are no irregular verbs at all. And again, as with the present/future tense, the simple past tense is formed by adding suffixes (which vary with person) onto the verb root (which will be represented by V- below). These suffixes are as follows:

Men V-dim	Biz V-dik
Siz V-dingiz	Sizlar V-dinglar
Sen V-ding	Siz V-dingiz
U V-di	Ular V-dilar

To form the negative you add **-ma** directly to the verb root, just like with the present/future tense.

I went	Bordim	I studied	O'qidim
You (s/f) went	Bordingiz	You (s/f) studied	O'qidingiz
You (s/i) went	Bording	You (s/i) studied	O'qiding
He went	Bordi	He studied	O'qidi
We went	Bordik	We studied	O'qidik
You (p/f) went	Bordinglar	You (p/f) studied	O'qidinglar
You (p/i) went	Bordingiz	You (p/i) studied	O'qidingiz
They went	Bordilar	They studied	O'qidilar

I worked	Ishladim	I saw	Ko'rdim
You (s/f) worked	Ishladingiz	You (s/f) saw	Ko'rdingiz
You (s/i) worked	Ishlading	You (s/i) saw	Ko'rding
He worked	Ishladi	He saw	Ko'rdi
We worked	Ishladik	We saw	Ko'rdik
You (p/f) worked	Ishladinglar	You (p/f) saw	Ko'rdinglar
You (p/i) worked	Ishladingiz	You (p/i) saw	Ko'rdingiz
They worked	Ishladilar	They watched	Ko'rdilar

I ate	Yedim	I left	Ketdim
You (p/f) ate	Yedingiz	You (s/f) left	Ketdingiz
You (s/i) ate	Yeding	You (s/i) left	Ketding
He ate	Yedi	He left	Ketdi
We ate	Yedik	We left	Ketdik
You (p/f) ate	Yedinglar	You (p/f) left	Ketdinglar
You (p/i) ate	Yedingiz	You (p/i) ate	Ketdingiz
They ate	Yedilar	They left	Ketdilar

I played	O'ynadim	I got up	Turdim
You (s/f) played	O'ynadingiz	You (s/f) got up	Turdingiz
You (s/i) played	O'ynading	You (s/i) got up	Turding
He played	O'ynadi	He got up	Turdi
We played	O'ynadik	We got up	Turdik
You (p/f) played	O'ynadinglar	You (p/f) got up	Turdinglar
You (p/i) played	O'ynadingiz	You (p/i) got up	Turdingiz
They played	O'ynadilar	They got up	Turdilar

### **The verb 'to be' in the past tense:**

As can probably be guessed, the past tense of 'to be' is not this simple (like its future and present tense counterparts). The stem of the verb is not even the same; it is *e-* instead of *bo'l-* (future tense) or nothing (present tense). Furthermore, it cannot be made negative like a normal verb (ie. you can't use *-ma*). In the positive form it's conjugated just like other verbs (*edim, edingiz, eding, edi, edik, edinglar, edingiz* and *edilar*). To make it negative you add the word *emas* in front of it (*emas edim, emas edingiz, emas eding, emas edi*, etc.). So:

I was a student. = *Men talaba edim.*  
 He was not a student. = *U talaba emas edi.*  
 You were a student. = *Siz talaba edingiz.*

**12. Read the following sentences and translate them into English.**

1. Men kecha maktabga bordim.
2. Men o'tgan yili basketbol o'ynadim.
3. Ular o'tgan hafta bozorga bordilar.
4. Men kecha soat to'qqizda uyga bordim.
5. Biz kecha soat oltida kechki ovqatni yedik.
6. O'g'il bola o'tgan yili maktabda muzikani o'qidi.
7. Qiz bola kecha televizor ko'rdi.
8. O'tgan yakshanba kuni kitob o'qidim
9. O'tgan yili Parijga bordim
10. Biz kecha soat yetti yarimda turdik.

- Yesterday = Kecha  
-Last year = O'tgan yili  
-Last week = O'tgan hafta  
-Last Sunday = O'tgan yakshanba kuni

The word *o'tgan* itself means 'last' ('passed') and can be put in front of any time phrase. The words for 'week' and 'year' by themselves are, respectively, *hafta* and *yil*. As with the days of the week none of these time expressions require the suffix *+da*.

**13. Complete the following sentences using the verbs located in the box below. Check your answers with the answer key.**

<b>studied</b>	<b>played</b>	<b>watched</b>	<b>got up</b>	<b>went</b>	<b>worked</b>	<b>left</b>	<b>ate</b>
<b>o'qidim</b>	<b>o'ynadim</b>	<b>ko'rdim</b>	<b>turdim</b>	<b>bordim</b>	<b>ishladim</b>	<b>ketdim</b>	<b>yedim</b>

1. Men kecha soat yettida \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Men kechqurun soat oltida kechki ovqatni \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Men o'tgan yakshanba kuni bozorga \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Men o'tgan dushanba kuni basketbol \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Men kecha televizor \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Men o'tgan yili mehmonxonada \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Men o'tgan yili maktabda \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Men o'tgan hafta Buxoroga \_\_\_\_\_.



**14. Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speaker. Make up similar dialogues using the words and word combinations given below. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

**A. Kecha nima qilding?**

**B. Kecha televizor ko'rdim.**

**A. Kecha necha soat televizor ko'rding?**

**B. Bir soat televizor ko'rdim.\***

\* Remember *soat* means both 'hour' and 'o'clock'. *Bir soat* = one hour, *soat bir* = one o'clock

1. kecha - televizor ko'r- - bir soat
2. kecha - bozorga bor- soat oltida
3. o'tgan yili - mehmonxonada ishla- - to'rt hafta
4. o'tgan yili - maktabda - sakkiz hafta
5. o'tgan yakshanba kuni - kitob o'qi- - bir soat
6. o'tgan hafta - basketbol o'yna- - olti soat
7. o'tgan hafta - O'zbekistonga ketdi – juma kuni



## End-of-Lesson Tasks



1. Listen to the following statements read in Uzbek. Circle the times you hear.

1. 6:30 - 5:30
2. 6:00 - 7:00
3. 9:30 - 8:30
4. 5:30 - 5:45
5. in the morning - in the evening
6. 6:00 - 8:00



2. Read and listen to the following text in Uzbek. Put T (True) or F (False) next to the statements that are written below the text. Check your work with the answer key.

Salom. Mening ismim Shohrux. Men Andijonda yashayman. Mening kichkina uyim bor. Men bu maktabda o'qituvchi bo'lib ishlayman. Har kuni soat oltida turaman. Nonushta qilaman va maktabga ketaman. Seshanba va payshanba kunlari ikki soat futbol o'ynayman. Darsdan keyin bozorga boraman. Kechqurunlari bir soat televizor ko'raman va ikki soat kitob o'qiyman.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ U Andijonda yashaydi.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ U kichkina uyda yashaydi.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ U talaba.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Har kuni soat oltida turadi.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Nonushta qilmaydi.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Shohrux shanba va dushanba kunlari uch soat futbol o'ynaydi.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Darsdan keyin bozorga boradi.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Kechqurunlari ikki soat ishlaydi.

3. Describe your daily schedule of activities, including the times in Uzbek. For example, start with what time you get up, then eat breakfast, etc. "I get up at 6:00 and eat breakfast at 6:30. I go to school at ....."

4. Find out what your partner did yesterday at 7:00 am, 7:30 am, 10:00 am, 1:00 pm, 4:00 pm, and 8:00 pm, and how long each activity lasted. Work in pairs or in small groups.

## Vocabulary List

After	N+dan keyin
In the morning	Ertalab
In the afternoon	Tushdan keyin
In the evening	Kechqurun
Everyday	Har kuni
Last year	O'tgan yili
Last week	O'tgan hafta
Last Sunday	O'tgan yakshanba kuni
Hospital	Kasalxona
School	Maktab
At school	Maktabda
Class	Dars
Music	Muzika
Book	Kitob
Breakfast	Nonushta
Lunch	Tushki ovqat
Dinner	Kechki ovqat
Home	Uy
At home	Uyda
Market	Bozor
On Sunday	Yakshanba kuni
To go	Bor-
To go to the market	Bozorga bor-
To play soccer/basketball	Futbol/Basketbol o'yna-
To watch television	Televizor ko'r-
To eat breakfast	Nonushta qil-
To eat dinner/lunch	Kechki/tushki ovqatni ye-
To get up/stand up/wake up	Tur-
To read/study	O'qi-
To work	Ishla-
What time is it?	Soat necha bo'ldi?
It is three o'clock.	Soat uch bo'ldi.
When	Qachon
Man	Erkak kishi
Woman	Ayol kishi
Boy	O'g'il bola
Girl	Qiz bola

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 2

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| A. three thirty pm     | E. eleven thirty pm    |
| B. eight forty-five am | F. thirteen fifty-five |
| C. ten after six       | G. twelve o'clock      |
| D. zero nine hundred   | H. four fifteen        |

### Exercise 3

- A. 8:15 am
- B. 9:50
- C. 5:10
- D. 4:30 pm

### Exercise 7

- A 3. We study in the morning.
- B 1. I go to school at 9:30.
- C 2. They eat breakfast at 7:00.
- D 4. She reads a book in the evening.

### Exercise 8

Bobur is a student. He studies at school. Everyday he gets up at 7:15. He has breakfast at 7:30. He goes to school at 8:00. After school he plays basketball. He reads books and watches TV in the evening. Bobur does not study on Saturday and Sunday.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Is Bobur a teacher?                   | Yo'q, Bobur talaba.                               |
| 2. Where does he study?                  | Maktabda o'qiydi.                                 |
| 3. What does he do at 7:15?              | Soat yettidan o'n beshta o'tganda turadi.         |
| 4. When does he have breakfast?          | Soat yetti yarimda nonushta qiladi.               |
| 5. When does he go to school?            | Soat sakkizda maktabga ketadi.                    |
| 6. When does he play basketball?         | Darsdan keyin basketbol o'ynaydi.                 |
| 7. What does he do in the evening?       | Kechqurunlari kitob o'qiydi va televizor ko'radi. |
| 8. Does he study on Saturday and Sunday? | Yo'q, shanba va yakshanba kunlari o'qimaydi.      |

### Exercise 9 - Your answers may vary. However, did you understand the statements?

- 6. I eat breakfast.
- 3. I go to school.
- 1. I eat lunch.
- 5. I play basketball.
- 4. I eat dinner.

7. I study at home.
2. I watch television.

### Exercise 11

1. B I play soccer after dinner.
2. C She goes to the market in the morning.
3. A I go to work in the morning.
4. B I play soccer at home on Saturday.
5. A He watches television in the afternoon.

### Exercise 12

1. Yesterday I went to school.
2. Last year I played basketball.
3. They went to the market last week.
4. I went home at 9:00 yesterday.
5. We ate dinner at 6:00 yesterday.
6. The boy studied music at school last year.
7. The girl watched television yesterday.
8. Last Sunday I read a book.
9. I was in Samarqand a year ago.
10. We got up at 7:30 yesterday.

### Exercise 13

1. turdim I got up at 7:00 yesterday.
2. yedim I ate dinner at 6:00 o'clock.
3. bordim I went to the market last Sunday.
4. o'ynadim I played basketball last Monday.
5. ko'rdim I watched television yesterday.
6. ishladim I worked at the hotel last year.
7. o'qidim I studied at school last year.
8. bordim I left for Bukhara last week.

### End of Lesson Exercise 1

1. 6:30
2. 7:00
3. 9:30
4. 5:45
5. in the morning
6. 8:00

## Exercise 2

1. T The man lives in Andijon.
2. T He lives in small house.
3. F He is a student.
4. T Everyday he gets up at 6:00 a.m.
5. F He does not have breakfast.
6. F Bobur plays soccer on Saturday and Monday for 3 hours.
7. T He goes to the market after school.
8. F In the evening he works for 2 hours.

Hello. My name is Bobur. I live in Andijon. I have a small house. I am a teacher at this school. Everyday I get up at 6:00 a.m. I eat breakfast and go to school. On Tuesday and Thursday I play soccer for 2 hours. After school, I go shopping. In the evening I watch TV for an hour and read books for 2 hours.

## Lesson 5

### Family

### Oila

This lesson will introduce you to:

- The kinship terms used for immediate and extended family
- How to ask and answer simple questions about family members
- The pronouns “who,” “this,” “that,” “these,” and “those”.

Family is extremely important in Uzbekistan. Uzbek families tend to be quite large, often with several generations living in one home, and are generally patriarchal with the oldest male serving as the overall head of household. Uzbeks generally have a minimum of three kids, but they may have many more than that. Uzbek children tend to live with their parents at least until they get married (18-20 for girls, 23-27 for boys), and the youngest male sibling will often live at home (with his own wife and children) forever.



1. Look at these photos of families. Listen to the kinship terms and repeat after the speaker.

Family	Oila
Parents	Ota-Ona
Mother	Ona
Father	Ota
Child(ren)	Bola(lar)
Daughter	Qiz
Son	O'g'il
Grandparents	Bobo va Buvi
Grandfather	Bobo
Grandmother	Buvi
Younger Sister	Singil
Older Sister	Opa
Younger Brother	Uka
Older Brother	Aka

This = Bu

This (for something already mentioned) = Shu

That/It/He/She = U

That (for something already mentioned) = O'sha

Who (used in questions only) = Kim

-To make any of these plural, add **+lar** (the plural suffix) to the end (*bular, shular, ular*, etc.).



**2. Listen to the following dialogues and repeat them after the speaker. Role-play the dialogues using the pictures above.**

- |                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. Who is this?           | Bu kim?              |
| B. This is my mother.        | Bu mening* onam.     |
| 2. A. Who is that?           | U kim?               |
| B. That is my little sister. | U singlim.**         |
| 3. A. Who are they?          | Ular kim?            |
| B. They are my parents.      | Ular ota-onam.       |
| 4. A. Who are they?          | Ular kim?            |
| B. They are my grandparents. | Ular bobom va buvim. |

\* The possessive pronouns *mening*, *sening*, *uning*, etc. are optional. It's the possessive suffixes (N+(i)m, +(i)ng, +(s)i) that really matter.

\*\* This isn't a spelling mistake. The second *i* drops out when this word is possessed.

**3. Translate the following sentences into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

- Ota-onamning bir o'g'li va ikki qizi\* bor.
- Men bobom va buvimning katta uyida yashayman.
- Uning ota-onasi Xivada yashaydilar. Ular ishchi.
- Mening ikki akam bor. Ular soldat. Ular lashkargohda yashaydilar.
- Uning opasi bor. Uning ismi Laylo.
- Akam o'ttiz yoshda. Uning o'g'li\*\* va qizi bor.

\* The plural suffix *+lar* is unnecessary when a number is present (like *ikki*). 'Girls' = *qizlar*, but '2 girls' = *2 qiz*.

\*\* *O'g'il* works like *singil*, the *i* drops out when possessed.

**4. Tell about your mother/father/sister/brother/grandfather/grandmother according to the scheme below:**

- name
- age
- occupation
- where they live (city and type of residence).

**Model:** Bu mening otam. Uning ismi Ne'mat. U qirq sakkiz yoshda. U o'qituvchi bo'lib ishlaydi. Samarqandda yashaydi. Uning kichkina uyi bor.

**5. Create questions in Uzbek for the following answers. Check your work with the answer key for some suggested questions.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Ha, bu mening ukam.
2. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Uning ismi Ahmad.
3. \_\_\_\_\_?  
U Namangonda yashaydi.
4. \_\_\_\_\_?  
U vrach bo'lib ishlaydi.
5. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Dushanba kuni ishga boradi.
6. \_\_\_\_\_?  
Yo'q, seshanba kuni futbol o'ynaydi.



**6. Listen to the audio. Circle the word you hear. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. mother - father
2. daughter - son
3. family - parents
4. children - grandparents
5. sister - brother
6. grandmother - grandfather



**7. Listen and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook.**

Husband	Er
Wife	Xotin
Married (for males)	Uylangan
Unmarried (for males)	Uylanmagan
Married (for females)	Turmushga chiqqan
Unmarried (for females)	Turmushga chiqmagan

**8. Fill in the blanks using the words written in the boxes below. Be sure to apply the appropriate possessive suffixes. Check your answers with the answer key.**

**1.**  
o'g'il                      besh yoshda      o'ttiz yoshda      uning                      uning                      uylangan                      vrach

Mening akam \_\_\_\_\_. Uning xotini \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ ismi Laylo. U \_\_\_\_\_.  
Ularning \_\_\_\_\_ bor. U \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ ismi Ahmad.

**2.**  
turmushga chiqqan      uning                      sakkiz yoshda      qiz      uning                      singil      o'n yoshda      soldat      ularning

Mahmudning \_\_\_\_\_ bor. \_\_\_\_\_ ismi Ra'no. U \_\_\_\_\_.  
Uning eri \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ ismi Sultonali. Ularning ikki \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ ismlari Nigora va Aziza. Nigora kattaroq\* va u \_\_\_\_\_. Aziza \_\_\_\_\_.

\*+roq forms comparative adjectives. It works just like the 'er' in the English words 'bigger' and 'older.'

**9. Make up short stories in Uzbek about the people listed below.**

1. Gulshan – turmushga chiqqan, 31 yoshda, uning eri, ishchi, bir o'g'li va bir qizi.
2. Bobur – uylangan, 28 yoshda, uning xotini, o'qituvchi, bolasi yo'q.
3. Saodat – turmushga chiqmagan, 20 yoshda, ota-onasining uyida, talaba, bir akasi.



**10. Listen to several short dialogues as people answer questions about their family members. Circle the correct answer for each question. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. A. U kim?  
B. She is my mother / sister / grandmother.
2. A. U turmushga chiqqanmi?  
B. No, she is single / a doctor / 25 years old.
3. A. U kim?  
B. He/she is my wife / my husband / my father.
4. A. U uylanganmi?  
B. Yes, he is married / single / a soldier.
5. A. Ular kim?  
B. They are my parents / my children / my grandparents.
6. A. Ular qayerda yashaydilar?  
B. They live in the barracks / in the tent / in the apartment.

7. A. Sizning akangiz bormi?  
B. Yes, I have two brothers / two sisters / two sons.
8. A. U kim?  
B. That is my wife / mother / husband.
9. A. Uning bolasi bormi?  
B. Yes, she has two brothers / two sisters / two sons.

**11. Read and translate the text. Put T (True) or F (False) next to the statements below. Check your answers with the answer key.**

Otabekning bobosi va buvisi bor. Ular Otabek va oilasi bilan\* yashaydilar. Otabekning akasi yo'q. Uning ikki singli bor. Ular talaba. Otabek uylangan. Uning xotini vrach. Otabek va xotining bir o'g'li va bir qizi bor.

1. Otabekning bobosi va buvisisi yo'q.
2. Otabek uylangan.
3. Uning ikki singli bor.
4. Otabek va xotini talaba.
5. Otabek vrach.
6. Otabekning ikki bolasi bor.

\* *Bilan* means 'with.' It follows words instead of preceding them like in English.



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

1. Give a brief description in Uzbek of your immediate family. Include the age, name, and profession of each person, and tell whether each person is married or single, and where he/she lives. If you want to, use real pictures of your family members.
2. Ask your classmate in Uzbek about his/her mother/father/sister/brother/etc. What are their names, how old are they, where do they live, and what are their professions.
3. Work in small groups. Describe the pictures below. Use new vocabulary.



## Vocabulary List

Parents	Ota-Ona
Father	Ota
Mother	Ona
Child(ren)	Bola(lar)
Son	O'g'il
Daughter	Qiz
Older Brother	Aka
Younger Brother	Uka
Older Sister	Opa
Younger Sister	Singil
Grandparents	Bobo va Buvi
Grandmother	Buvi
Grandfather	Bobo
Husband	Er
Wife	Xotin
Married (male)	Uylangan
Married (female)	Turmushga Chiqqan
Unmarried (male)	Uylanmagan
Unmarried (female)	Turmushga Chiqmagan
Who is this/that?	Bu/U kim?
Who are these/those?	Bular/Ular kim?
This/that is...	Bu/U...
These/those are...	Bular/Ular...
With	Bilan

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 3

1. My mother and father have one son and two daughters.
2. I live in my grandparents' big house.
3. His parents live in Khiva. They are laborers.
4. I have two brothers. They are soldiers. They live in a military camp.
5. She has a sister. Her name is Laylo.
6. My brother is 30 years old. He has a son and a daughter.

### Exercise 5 - These are some possible questions. Yours may vary slightly.

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Bu sizning ukangizmi?     | Is this your brother?    |
| 2. Uning ismi nima?          | What is his name?        |
| 3. Qayerda yashaydi?         | Where does he live?      |
| 4. Kim bo'lib ishlaydi?      | What is his occupation?  |
| 5. Qachon ishga boradi?      | When does he go to work? |
| 6. Seshanba kuni ishlaydimi? | Does he work on Tuesday? |

### Exercise 6

1. Father
2. Daughter
3. Family
4. Grandparents
5. Older Sister
6. Grandfather

### Exercise 8

1. Mening akam uylangan. Uning xotini o'ttiz yoshda. Uning ismi Laylo. U vrach. Ularning o'g'li bor. U besh yoshda. Uning ismi Ahmad.  
My brother is married. His wife is 30 years old. Her name is Laylo. She is a doctor. They have a son. He is 5 years old. His name is Ahmad.
2. Mahmudning singli bor. Uning ismi Ra'no. U turmushga chiqqan. Uning eri soldat. Uning ismi Sultonali. Ularning ikki qizi bor. Ularning ismlari Nigora va Aziza. Nigora kattaroq va o'n yoshda. Aziza sakkiz yoshda. Mahmud has a sister. Her name is Ra'no. She is married. Her husband is a soldier. His name is Sultonali. They have two daughters. Their names are Nigora and Aziza. Nigora is older and is 10 years old. Aziza is 8 years old.

### Exercise 10

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. U kim? U mening singlim.                            | 1. Who is she? She is my sister.                       |
| 2. U turmushga chiqqanmi? Yo'q, u turmushga chiqmagan. | 2. Is she married? No, she is single.                  |
| 3. U kim? U mening erim.                               | 3. Who is he? He is my husband.                        |
| 4. U uylanganmi? Ha, u uylangan.                       | 4. Is he married? Yes, he is married.                  |
| 5. Ular kim? Ular mening bolalarim.                    | 5. Who are they? They are my children.                 |
| 6. Ular qayerda yashaydilar? Ular domda yashaydilar.   | 6. Where do they live? They live in an apartment.      |
| 7. Sizning akangiz bormi? Ha, mening ikki akam bor.    | 7. Do you have any brothers? Yes, I have two brothers. |
| 8. U kim? U mening xotinim.                            | 8. Who is that? That is my wife.                       |
| 9. Uning bolasi bormi? Ha, uning ikki o'g'li bor.      | 9. Does she have any children? Yes, she has two sons.  |

### Exercise 11

1. F Otabek has no grandparents.
2. T Otabek is married.
3. T He has two sisters
4. F Otabek and his wife are students.
5. F Otabek is a doctor.
6. T Otabek has two children.

Otabek has a grandfather and a grandmother. They live with Otabek and his family. Otabek has no brothers. He has two sisters. They are students. Otabek is married. His wife is a doctor. Otabek and his wife have a daughter and a son.

## Lesson 6 Around Town Shaharda

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Cardinal directions
- Names of urban buildings and landmarks
- How to ask and answer questions about locations of places and buildings.



**1. Listen to and repeat the cardinal directions.**

<p>Northwest Shimoli G'arb(iy)</p>	<p>North Shimol(iy)*</p>	<p>Northeast Shimoli Sharq(iy)</p>
<p>West G'arb(iy)</p>	<p>East Sharq(iy)</p>	<p>East Sharq(iy)</p>
<p>Southwest Janubi G'arb(iy)</p>	<p>South Janub(iy)</p>	<p>Southeast Janubi Sharq(iy)</p>

\*The '(iy)' we've attached to all of these directions makes them into adjectives. Without this '(iy)' the words are nouns. So: *sharq* = the direction 'east,' *sharqiy* = 'eastern.'

To properly use the cardinal directions in Uzbek a few additional words and suffixes will be needed:

-First of all (this will be useful a little later), Uzbeks do not like to end sentences with cases (like *+da*, *+ga* and *+dan*). In circumstances where this is otherwise unavoidable you should use the word *joylashgan* directly after the case at the very end of the sentence. This word means 'is located at.' There were several instances in previous chapters where we should have used this suffix but chose not to for simplicity's sake. Please make a note of this. In situations where a word ends in a case suffix, but where 'is located at' is inappropriate, you should use the suffix *+dir* attached directly onto the case (we're avoiding a deeper discussion of this suffix because it can affect sentences in a large variety of ways, most of which are irrelevant to our purposes). Sometimes *+dir* and *joylashgan* are both possible, and you can choose between them.

-The Uzbek word for 'direction' or 'side' is *tomon*.

-And lastly, in English we simply say: City AA is east of City BB. Uzbeks say: City AA is located on the eastern side of City BB (AA BBning *sharqiy tomonida joylashgan*). This is different again when you introduce a quantified distance: AA is 100km east of BB. In Uzbek this is: AA is 100km in the east from BB (AA BBdan *100km sharqda joylashgan*).



**2. Listen to the following sentences and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in your workbook.**

Namangan is north of Ferghana.

Namangon Farg'onaning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.

Nukus is west of Tashkent.

Nukus Toshkentning g'arbiy tomonida joylashgan.

Termez is south of Jizzakh.

Termiz Jizzaxning janubiy tomonida joylashgan.

Samarqand is east of Bukhara.

Samarqand Buxoroning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.



**3. Work with a partner. Tell each other where certain cities/locations are in relation to other cities/locations. Compose sentences according to the exercise above and the model below.**

**Model: Seattle is north of Portland.**

**Sietl Portlandning shimoliy tomonida joylashgan.**

**The apartment building is (located) east of the military camp.**

**Dom lashkargohning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.**



**4. Topographical features, urban buildings and landmarks are useful reference points when getting to know a new area or for giving and receiving directions. Listen to a list of common sites and features. Repeat after the speaker while following along in the workbook.**

Airport	Aeroport
Bank	Bank
Building	Bino
House	Uy
Bus station	Ostanovka*
Train station	Poyezd Vokzali
Police station	Militsiyaxona
Café	Kafe
Restaurant	Restoran
Church	Cherkov
Mosque	Masjid
Temple	Ibodatxona
Movie Theater	Kinoteatr
Hospital	Kasalxona
Market	Bozor
Pharmacy	Dorixona
Post office	Pochtaxona
Store	Do'kon/Magazin**

Park	Park
Factory	Zavod
Bridge	Ko'prik
Farm	Ferma
Field	Dala
Forest	O'rmon
Lake	Ko'l
Mountain	Tog'
Steppe	Dasht
Desert	Sahro/Cho'l
River	Daryo

\* The first 'o' in this word is pronounced as an 'a.' It is Russian in origin.

\*\* Uzbek/Russian

**5. Match the English word in the left column with the Uzbek equivalent in the right column. Check your work with the answer key.**

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. Airport       | A. Zavod      |
| 2. Bank          | B. Kasalxona  |
| 3. Bus Station   | C. Aeroport   |
| 4. Café          | D. Dorixona   |
| 5. Mosque        | E. Restoran   |
| 6. Movie Theater | F. Park       |
| 7. Factory       | G. Pochtaxona |
| 8. Hospital      | H. Ostanovka  |
| 9. Park          | I. Bank       |
| 10. Pharmacy     | J. Kafe       |
| 11. Post Office  | K. Kinoteatr  |
| 12. Restaurant   | L. Masjid     |

**6. Translate the following sentences from Uzbek into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. Bozor bankning janubiy tomonida joylashgan.
2. Daryo tog'larning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.
3. Aeroport mehmonxonaning g'arbiy tomonida joylashgan.
4. Tog'lar va ko'llar o'rmonning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.
5. Daryo fermaning janubiy tomonida joylashgan.
6. Kinoteatr kasalxonaning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.
7. Ko'l parkning shimoliy tomonida joylashgan.

**7. Practice composing and pronouncing the vocabulary. Using the words below, create sentences according to the model.**

**Model:**

**Park pochtaxonaning sharqiy tomonida joylashgan.**

- |              |                 |          |
|--------------|-----------------|----------|
| 1. Aeroport  | - ko'l          | - sharq  |
| 2. Bank      | - kasalxona     | - janub  |
| 3. Dorixona  | - pochtaxona    | - g'arb  |
| 4. Ko'prik   | - daryo         | - shimol |
| 5. Ostanovka | - militsiyaxona | - sharq  |
| 6. Zavod     | - tog'          | - janub  |
| 7. Bozor     | - park          | - g'arb  |
| 8. Dala      | - ko'l          | - shimol |



**8. Listen to the speaker and circle the term you hear for each line. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- |                  |               |          |
|------------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. north         | west          | south    |
| 2. bank          | park          | bridge   |
| 3. train station | bus station   | airport  |
| 4. restaurant    | café          | factory  |
| 5. post office   | pharmacy      | hospital |
| 6. mosque        | movie theater | factory  |
| 7. lake          | river         | farm     |
| 8. building      | bridge        | mountain |



**9. Listen to the following words and word combinations and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in your workbook.**

- |                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| In front of.....      | .....ning oldida.               |
| Next to.....          | .....ning yonida.               |
| Between..... and..... | .....bilan .....ning o'rtasida. |
| Across from.....      | .....ning qarshisida.           |
| Near.....             | .....ning yaqinida.             |
| Behind.....           | .....ning orqasida.             |
| Where is.....?        | .....qayerda?                   |

You should recognize the genitive case and requisite possessive suffix in all of these (as +ning N+(s)i). If you were to say ‘near me,’ ‘behind you’ or ‘in front of us’ you would, logically, have to change the +(s)i to the appropriate possessive suffix (+(i)m, +(i)ng, +(i)miz, etc.). The locative case in +da is also present in all of the above words. Since these all end in a case you should use *joylashgan* to finish the sentence off.

**10. Translate the following dialogues into English. Check your work with the Answer Key.**

1. Ko'l qayerda?\* Ko'l o'rmoning yonida joylashgan.
2. Bozor qayerda? Bozor militsiyaxona bilan masjidning o'rtasida joylashgan.
3. Pochtaxona qayerda? Pochtaxona kasalxonaning yaqinida joylashgan.
4. Poyezd vokzali qayerda? Poyezd vokzali parkning qarshisida joylashgan.
5. Kafe qayerda? Kafe mehmonxonaning oldida joylashgan.

\* Note: *qayerda* doesn't require *joylashgan*, it has become a word of its own.

**11. Working with a partner, compose similar dialogues using the words below. Then role-play your dialogues.**

**Model:**

**A. Kechirasiz, aka. Park qayerda?**

A. Excuse me, Sir. Where is the park?

**B. Park kasalxonaning oldida joylashgan.**

B. The park is in front of the hospital.

**A. Rahmat.**

A. Thank you.

**B. Arzimaydi.**

B. You are welcome.

- |                  |                    |              |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. park          | - kasalxona        | - oldida     |
| 2. aeroport      | - ostanovka        | - qarshisida |
| 3. o'rmon        | - tog'             | - yonida     |
| 4. militsiyaxona | - kinoteatr        | - orqasida   |
| 5. masjid        | - zavod bilan park | - o'rtasida  |



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

**1. Translate each phrase into Uzbek. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A. The restaurant is next to the hotel.
- B. The park is north of the lake.
- C. The bank is between the mosque and the bus station.
- D. The market is south of the bridge.
- E. The café is across from the church.
- F. The forest is in front of the mountain.

**2. Work with a partner or in small groups. In Uzbek, come up with a list of the facilities on your base. Then draw a schematic map of the base. Now describe the locations of each facility. Use the following vocabulary: *do'kon, kasalxona, militsiyaxona, kinoteatr, park, mehmonxona, cherkov, aeroport, restoran* and *o'rmon*. Use these prepositions: *o'rtasida, yonida, qarshisida, oldida*.**

## Vocabulary List

Where	Qayerda
North	Shimol
South	Janub
East	Sharq
West	G'arb
Mountain	Tog'
Lake	Ko'l
River	Daryo
Forest	O'rmon
Bridge	Ko'prik
Store	Do'kon/Magazin
Market	Bozor
Church/Mosque/Temple	Cherkov/Masjid/Ibodatxona
Restaurant	Restoran
Café	Kafe
Park	Park
Bank	Bank
Airport	Aeroport
Train station	Poyezd Vokzali
Bus station	Ostanovka
Pharmacy	Dorixona
Hospital	Kasalxona
Movie Theater	Kinoteatr
Factory	Zavod
Farm	Ferma
Post office	Pochtaxona
Field	Dala
Police station	Militsiyaxona
In front of	Oldida
Next to	Yonida
Between	O'rtasida
Near	Yaqinida
Behind	Orqasida
Across from	Qarshisida

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 5

1. C
2. I
3. H
4. J
5. L
6. K
7. A
8. B
9. F
10. D
11. G
12. E

### Exercise 6

1. The market is south of the bank
2. The river is east of the mountains.
3. The airport is west of the hotel.
4. The mountains and lakes are east of the forest.
5. The river is south of the farm.
6. The movie theater is east of the hospital.
7. The lake is north of the park.

### Exercise 8

1. north - shimol
2. bridge - ko'prik
3. bus station - ostanovka
4. café - kafe
5. post office - pochtaxona
6. mosque - masjid
7. farm - ferma
8. mountain – tog'

### Exercise 10

1. Where is the lake? The lake is next to the forest.
2. Where is the market? The market is between the police station and the mosque.
3. Where is the post office? The post office is near the hospital.
4. Where is the train station? The train station is across from the park.
5. Where is the café? It is in front of the hotel.

### **End of Lesson Exercise 1**

- A. Restoran mehmonxonaning yonida joylashgan.
- B. Park ko'lining shimoliy tomonida joylashgan.
- C. Bank masjid bilan ostanovkaning o'rtasida joylashgan.
- D. Bozor ko'prikning janubiy tomonida joylashgan.
- E. Kafe cherkovning qarshisida joylashgan.
- F. O'rmon tog'ning oldida joylashgan.

## Lesson 7

### Shopping

### Bozor Qilish

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Customs and practices accepted in Uzbek marketplaces
- Names of foods and stores
- How to make purchases in Uzbek shops
- The verbs “to want,” “to buy,” “to pay,” and “to take”
- The modal verb “can”.

As mentioned in previous chapters, the economy of Uzbekistan is not particularly robust. Living conditions are generally lower than in the United States, and many of the creature comforts we’re accustomed to are considered luxury items in Uzbekistan. Despite this, a brief tour of any of the major bazaars (like Tashkent’s Chorsu Bazaar) quickly reveals that there is no shortage of basic foodstuffs like meat, grains, vegetables and fruits. Often these products are cheaper and of an even higher quality than what we have access to in the United States. Below are some facts about the economy of Uzbekistan:

GDP (per capita) - \$1800 (2005 est.)

GDP (official exchange rate) – 9.86 billion (2005 est.)

Inflation – 8.8% (2005 est.)

Population Below Poverty Line – 28% (2004 est.)



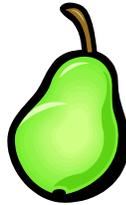
The local currency in Uzbekistan is the *so'm*. The Uzbek So'm is a relatively unstable currency. It regularly devalues in relation to the US Dollar, and, as such, the prices and equivalencies given in this manual may not currently be accurate. As of early June, 2006 one US Dollar was worth approximately 1225 Uzbek So'm. Uzbek currency comes in five common denominations: 1000, 500, 200, 100 and 50 *so'm*. Others exist, but it is highly unlikely that you will ever see them. Uzbek coins come in four common denominations: 50, 25, 10 and 5 *so'm*. The Uzbek equivalent of the cent is called the *tiyin*, but because of their extremely low value, these are not used anymore. The Uzbek word for ‘thousand’ is *ming*.



1. Listen to the following vocabulary and repeat after the speaker.



**Kebab  
Shashlik\*\***



**Pear  
Nok**



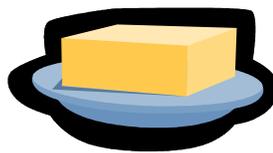
**Tomato  
Pomidor**



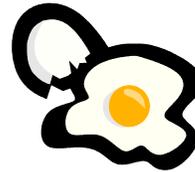
**Potato  
Kartoshka**



**Milk  
Sut**



**Butter  
Sariyog'**



**Egg  
Tuxum**



**Cheese  
Pishloq**



**Mutton  
Qo'y Go'shti\***



**Bread  
Non**



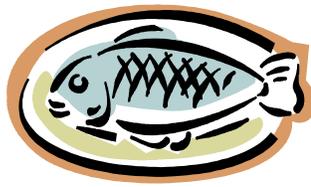
**Sugar  
Shakar**



**Ice cream  
Muzqaymoq**



**Tea  
Choy**



**Fish  
Baliq**



**Chicken  
Tovuq Go'shti\***



**Palov  
Palov\*\***

\* The word *go'sht* itself means meat (with a possessive suffix attached here). *Qo'y* and *tovuq* mean sheep and chicken (the whole animals, not the meats) respectively, themselves. Adding *go'shti* makes them mutton and chicken (meat).

\*\* *Shashlik* and *palov* are two of Uzbekistan's most common dishes. *Shashlik* is kebabs, and *palov* is similar to pilaf but with mutton, onions, yellow carrots and a variety of other ingredients depending on the region.

2. Work in pairs or in small groups. Ask your partner what foods he/she has at home. Use the model below.

Model: A. Uyingizda nima bor?

B. Uyimda non, pomidor va kartoshka bor.



3. Familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the speaker and follow along in the workbook. Look at the pictures and try to guess the meaning of the underlined words.



Bu oziq-ovqat do'koni.



Sharifa oziq-ovqat do'konida ishlaydi. U kassir.



Abbos oziq-ovqat do'konida ishlaydi. U sotuvchi.



Laylo kiyim-kechak do'konida ishlaydi. U sotuvchi.



Xurshid kiyim-kechak do'konida ishlaydi. U kassir.

Did you understand the new words?

**Oziq-ovqat do'koni** means grocery store (**oziq-ovqat** = foodstuffs).

**Kassir** means cashier.

**Sotuvchi** means salesperson.

**Kiyim-kechak do'koni** means clothing store (**kiyim kechak** = clothing).

Provided you're in a large city like Tashkent or Samarqand the terms above may well come in handy. Grocery and clothing stores certainly exist in these cities. However, most Uzbek towns and villages are entirely dependant on the local bazaar (*bozor*). Bazaars are generally outdoors (there are exceptions to this though) and consist of many sections (section = *rasta* in Uzbek). Some of the major sections are:

*Go'sht Rastasi* = Meat Section

*Meva Rastasi* = Fruit Section (*meva* = fruit)

*Sabzavot Rastasi* = Vegetable Section (*sabzavot* = vegetable)

*Kiyim-Kechak Rastasi* = Clothing Section

#### 4. Work in pairs or in small groups. Make up dialogues using the model below.

##### Model:

A. *Aziza qayerda ishlaydi?*

A. Where does Aziza work?

B. *Aziza oziq-ovqat do'konida ishlaydi.*

B. Aziza works at the grocery store.

There are three basic ways to express the English verb "to want" in Uzbek, each with its own subtleties. We will only cover one for simplicity's sake. It should be noted that this form can only be used when 'wanting' to perform an action (verb). It cannot be used to say "I want an apple"; only "I want to **buy/eat/see** (or any other verb) an apple." This verb form is constructed as follows: VERB-*moqchi*+(pronominal suffix). The pronominal suffix is the same as that used for the present/future tense, except the *-di* is missing from the third person singular and plural forms. Below is a full conjugation chart with the verb 'to go' (*bor-*):

Men bormoqchiman	Biz bormoqchimiz	= I/We want to go.
Siz bormoqchisiz	Sizlar bormoqchisizlar	= You want to go.
Sen bormoqchisan	Siz bormoqchisiz	= You want to go.
U bormoqchi	Ular bormoqchilar	= He/She/It/They want(s) to go.

To make this negative you cannot add the usual *-ma* suffix (ie. *bormamoqchiman* would not be correct). Instead you must use the present tense negative of "to be" in *emas* (see chapter one). So, "I don't want to go." = *Men bormoqchi emasman*. "You don't want to go." = *Sen bormoqchi emassan*. "He doesn't want to go." = *U bormoqchi emas*. To make this form past tense you use *edi*. So: "I wanted to go." = *Men bormoqchi edim*. "We didn't want to go." = *Biz bormoqchi emas edik*. You should recognize this pattern from lesson four.

The Uzbek verb for 'to buy' is *sotib ol-*, so "I want to buy..." = "... sotib olmoqchiman."



5. Familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the speaker and follow along in the workbook. Look at the pictures and try to guess the meaning of the underlined words.



Nigora kitob sotib olmoqchi. U kitob do'konida.



Farhod soat sotib olmoqchi. U sovg'a do'konida.

Did you understand the new words?

*Kitob* means book.

*Kitob do'koni* means bookstore.

*Soat* means clock.

*Sovg'a do'koni* means gift store (*sovg'a* = gift).

6. Match each Uzbek sentence in the left column with the English equivalent in the right column. Check your answers with the answer key.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Men non va sariyog' sotib olmoqchiman.      | A. Laylo wants to buy fish.        |
| 2. Xurshid kitob sotib olmoqchi.               | B. They want to buy cheese.        |
| 3. Laylo baliq sotib olmoqchi.                 | C. I want to buy bread and butter. |
| 4. Farhod soat sotib olmoqchi.                 | D. My sister wants to buy clothes. |
| 5. Biz sovg'a sotib olmoqchimiz.               | E. Farhod wants to buy a clock.    |
| 6. Ular pishloq sotib olmoqchilar.             | F. Xurshid wants to buy a book.    |
| 7. Mening singlim kiyim-kechak sotib olmoqchi. | G. We want to buy a gift.          |

The vast bulk of all products in Uzbekistan are bought by the kilogram (*kilogramm* or *kilo*) or liter (*litr*). These words are used like adjectives so they precede what they describe. Other quantity words include *qop* (sack) and *dona* (piece). A suffix (+*ta*) is sometimes attached to the ends of numbers when quantifying certain things (basically anything but measurements of quantity, size and time).

Some examples of the suffix:

One pear = *Bitta nok* (note: when *+ta* is added to *bir* (*bir+ta*) the 'r' changes to a 't')

Two pears = *Ikkita nok*

Three pears = *Uchta nok*

Ten pears = *O'nta nok*

Ninety nine pears = *To'qson to'qqizta nok*

But: *ikkita kun*, *uchta kilo* and *yarimta litr* are not possible because *kun* (day), *kilo* and *litr* are measurements of time and size. And remember: when Uzbek nouns are being counted or quantified the plural suffix *+lar* is unnecessary.

A kilo of pears	Bir kilo nok
A half kilo of mutton	Yarim kilo qo'y go'shti
A bag of potatoes	Bir qop kartoshka*
A loaf of bread	Bir dona non
A liter of water	Bir litr suv**
A 1.5 liters of milk	Bir yarim*** litr sut
A dozen (twelve) eggs	O'n ikkita tuxum

\* Uzbeks generally purchase potatoes by the kilo, not by the sack.

\*\* *Suv* = water

\*\*\* Note: One and a half = *Bir yarim* in Uzbek. Four and a half = *To'rt yarim*.

**7. Work with a partner or in small groups. Pretend that you are planning to have a surprise birthday party for one of your classmates. You need to buy some food and gifts. Make a shopping list and tell your partner in Uzbek what you want to buy.**

In Uzbek there are three words for 'how much/many.' The first is *necha*. *Necha* is a general word and can be used with pretty much anything. It is equivalent to either 'how much' or 'how many.' The second is *nechta*, and is used only for things that include *+ta* in the answer. It is only equivalent to 'how many.' The third is *qancha*, and is only equivalent to the English "how much." The Uzbek word for 'money' is *pul* (this word can be used with *necha* or *qancha*, but not *nechta*).

In Uzbek bazaars haggling is almost mandatory. Not haggling is considered quite strange (the opposite is true in Western-style stores however). Haggling can seem daunting at first, but it really isn't all that hard. For starters, you should always try to start off with a brief, polite introduction (see lesson one). You then ask the price of a certain quantity of the thing you wish to buy (QUANTITY THING *qancha/necha pul turadi?*). The seller (*sotuvchi*) will suggest a price slightly higher than normal. You can then either name your own price\* (PRICE *so'm beraman.*) or simply ask him to lower the price (*Narxni biroz tushirib bera olasizmi?*). This process can be repeated as many times as you wish, but once or twice is normally sufficient. The Uzbek words for OK are *xo'p*, *bo'ladi*, and *ma'qul* (two of these are combined into a phrase, *xo'p, bo'ladi*, or *xo'p, ma'qul*).

\* One should avoid suggesting less than two-thirds the original price.



**8. Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speaker.**

**A.** Kechirasiz. Pishloq sotib olmoqchiman. Bir kilosi qancha pul turadi?  
Excuse me. I want to buy cheese. How much is a kilo of it?

**B.** Bir kilo pishloq to'rt ming so'm turadi.\*  
One kilo of cheese is four thousand so'm.

\*The verb tur- itself means to stand.

**A.** Narxni tushirib bera olasizmi?\*

\*This phrase is too complex to explain at this point, just memorize it wholesale.

Can you lower the price?

**B.** Xo'p, bo'ladi. Uch ming besh yuz so'm.  
OK. Three thousand five hundred so'm.

**A.** Ma'qul. Olaman.\*  
OK. I'll take it.

\*The *ol-* in *sotib ol-* means 'to take,' and, as in English, can be used for 'to buy.'

**“A” hands over the money and “B” hands him/her the cheese.**

**A.** Rahmat.  
Thanks.

**B.** Arzimaydi.\* Osh Bo'lsin!  
You're welcome. Bon appetite!

**9. Pretend you want to buy the items listed below. One of your classmates is a salesperson. Role-play an “At the Bazaar” dialogue using the dialogue above as a model. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

1. Bir kilo nok - Ikki ming besh yuz so'm
2. Ikki kilo baliq - Sakkiz ming yetti yuz so'm
3. Bir qop kartoshka - Bir ming olti yuz so'm
4. Bir liter suv - To'rt yuz ellik so'm
5. Ikki yarim litr sut - Besh ming olti yuz so'm
6. To'rt dona non - Bir ming so'm
7. Yigirma to'rtta tuxum - To'rt ming to'qson yuz ellik so'm

**10. Complete the sentences using the words in the box. Remember to add the appropriate suffixes to each word. Translate the sentences to English. Check your answers with the answer key.**

kiyim-kechak rastasi    sabzavot rastasi    kitob do'koni    sovg'a do'koni    bozor

1. Ota-onam \_\_\_\_\_ sovg'alar sotib oladilar.
2. Ular \_\_\_\_\_ pomidor va katoshka sotib oladilar.
3. Mening akam \_\_\_\_\_ kitob sotib oladi.
4. Biz \_\_\_\_\_ kiyim-kechak sotib olamiz.
5. Sizlar \_\_\_\_\_ mevalar, sabzavotlar, sut va sariyog' sotib ola olasizlar.



**11. Listen and circle the words you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.**

1. clothing store / bookstore.
2. gift store / grocery store.
3. bookstore / grocery store.
4. department store/ bookstore.

\* The suffix **+gi** transforms time and location phrases into adjectives. So: *qarshisida* means “across from,” but *qarshisidagi* means “which is across from.”

In Uzbek there is no separate word for “can” or “to be able.” Instead the word *ol-* (to take) is used in conjunction with the verb representing the action that the individual ‘can’ do. The basic structure is as follows: *V-a ol-*. So, to be able to buy is *sotib ola ol-*. To be able to see is *ko'ra ol-*. To be able to read is *o'qiy ol-*.\* As with any other Uzbek verbal construction, this one can be conjugated for any person, tense, aspect or mood. Below are some examples:

I can see him. = *Men uni ko'ra olaman.*

You can go to the store. = *Sen magazinga bora olasan.*

We weren't able to study/read the book. = *Biz kitobni o'qiy olmadik.\*\**

They were able to buy a kilo of pears at the market. = *Ular bozorda bir kilo nok sotib ola oldilar.*

\* Note how the **-a** becomes **-y** when added to verbs ending in a vowel.

\*\* Note how the negative **-ma-** works the same as it does in most other Uzbek verbal forms.

I can go.	Men bora olaman.
You (s/f) can go.	Siz bora olasiz.
You (s/i) can go.	Sen bora olasan.
He/She can go.	U bora oladi.
We can go.	Biz bora olamiz.
You (p/f) can go.	Sizlar bora olasizlar.
You (p/i) can go.	Siz bora olasiz.
They can go.	Ular bora oladilar.



**12. a) Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook.**

A. Hello. I want to buy a loaf of bread. How much is it?

**Assalomu alaykum. Men bir dona non sotib olmoqchiman. Qancha pul turadi?**

B. Hello. It is two hundred and fifty so'm.

**Vaalaykum assalom. Ikki yuz ellik so'm turadi.**

A. Can you lower the price?

**Narxni tushirib bera olasizmi?**

B. Ok. Two hundred so'm.

**Xo'p, bo'ladi. Ikki yuz so'm.**

A. Alright. I'll take two loaves.

**Ma'qul. Ikki dona olaman.**

**b) Role-play the dialogue. Make up similar dialogues using the words below.**

1. ikki litr sut

2. bir kitob

3. bir yarim kilo tovuq go'shti

4. uch kilo pishloq

5. oltita tuxum



**13. Listen to and read along with the dialogue then answer the follow-up questions. Check your work with the answer key.**

Abbos: Salom, Muhabbat!

Muhabbat: Salom, Abbas!

Abbos: Bugun qayerga borasiz?

Muhabbat: Men bozorga boraman.

Abbos: Bozorda nima sotib olmoqchisiz?

Muhabbat: Non, ikki litr sut va uch kilo nok sotib olmoqchiman. Siz qayerga borasiz?

Abbos: Men kitob do'koniga borman .

Muhabbat: Nima sotib olmoqchisiz?

Abbos: Bobom uchun\* kitob sotib olmoqchiman.

\* *Uchun* means 'for.' It is a postposition.

**Questions:**

1. Where is Muhabbat going?
2. What does she want to buy?
3. Where is Abbas going?
4. What does he want to buy?



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

**1. Translate the following into Uzbek. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A. Where do you buy tomatoes and potatoes?
- B. One kilo of tomatoes costs 3500 so'm.
- C. I bought a book at the bookstore.
- D. How much does a kilo of sugar cost?

**2. In Uzbek, tell where you buy groceries/gifts/books/clothes.**

**3. What would you tell a salesperson in Uzbekistan if you want to buy a carton of milk/a watch/a dozen eggs? How would you ask the price of it? Role-play the dialogue.**

## Vocabulary List

How much (money)?	Qancha/Necha (pul)?
How many?	Nechta/Necha?
It costs ... dollars/so'm.	... dollar/so'm turadi.
I want to buy...	... olmoqchiman.
Kebab	Shashlik
Butter	Sariyog'
Chicken	Tovuq go'shti
Fish	Baliq
Mutton	Qo'y go'shti
Ice cream	Muzqaymoq
Milk	Sut
Tomato	Pomidor
Pear	Nok
Potato	Kartoshka
Sugar	Shakar
Pilaf	Palov
Cheese	Pishloq
Egg	Tuxum
A kilo of cheese.	Bir kilo pishloq.
A bag of potatoes.	Bir qop kartoshka.
A loaf of bread.	Bir dona non.
A liter of water.	Bir litr suv.
A dozen eggs.	O'n ikkita tuxum.
Market	Bozor
Clothing Store	Kiyim-kechak do'koni
Grocery Store	Oziq-ovqat do'koni
Bookstore	Kitob do'koni
Store	Do'kon/Magazin
Bread	Non
Money	Pul
Cashier	Kassir
Salesperson	Sotuvchi
To buy	Sotib ol-
To take	Ol-

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 6

1. C I want to buy bread and butter.
2. F Xurshid wants to buy a book.
3. A Laylo wants to buy fish.
4. E Farhod wants to buy a clock.
5. G We want to buy a gift.
6. B They want to buy cheese.
7. D My sister wants to buy clothes.

### Exercise 10

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. sovg'a do'koni       | My parents buy gifts at the gift store.                      |
| 2. sabzavot rastasi     | They buy tomatoes and potatoes at the grocery store.         |
| 3. kitob do'koni        | My brother buys books at the bookstore.                      |
| 4. kiyim-kechak rastasi | My sister and I buy clothes at the clothing store.           |
| 5. bozor                | We can buy fruit, vegetables, milk and butter at the bazaar. |

### Exercise 11

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. kitob do'koni      | bookstore        |
| 2. sovg'a do'koni     | gift store       |
| 3. oziq-ovqat do'koni | grocery store    |
| 4. bozor              | department store |

### Exercise 13

1. Muhabbat is going to the bazaar.
2. She wants to buy bread, two liters of water, and three kilos of pears.
3. Abbos is going to the bookstore.
4. He wants to buy a book.

### End of Lesson Exercise 1

- A. Siz pomidor va kartoshka qayerdan sotib olasiz?
- B. Bir kilo pomidor uch ming besh yuz so'm turadi.
- C. Men kitob do'konida kitob sotib oldim.
- D. Bir kilo shakar necha pul turadi?

## Lesson 8 Eating Out Restoranda

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Eating out in a restaurant in Uzbekistan
- Various menu items
- How to order menu items
- Different table service items.



**1. Look at the restaurant menu below. Follow along in the workbook and repeat the words after the speaker.**

### Small World Restaurant

Item		Price
Salad	Salat	400 so'm
Bread	Non	250 so'm
Hamburger	Gamburger	1200 so'm
Rice Pilaf	Palov	1500 so'm
Kebabs	Shashlik	1000 so'm
Pan-Fried Mutton	Qozon Kabob	2000 so'm
Chicken	Tovuq Go'shti	2500 so'm
Uzbek Ravioli	Chuchvara	1500 so'm
Uzbek Dumplings	Manti	1700 so'm
Noodle Soup	Lag'mon	2000 so'm
Ice Cream	Muzqaymoq	700 so'm
Apple Juice	Olma Sharbati	700 so'm
Orange Juice	Apelsin Sharbati	750 so'm
Coffee	Kofe	300 so'm
Tea	Choy	200 so'm
Beer	Pivo	750 so'm
Wine	Vino	1500 so'm

**2. Imagine that you have 6,000 so'm. What would you order at the "Small World Restaurant"?**



3. A) Listen to and read along with the following dialogue between a waiter and a patron.

A. **Kechirasiz\***, ofitsiant.

**Kechirasiz** = Sorry/Excuse me

A. Excuse me, waiter.

B. **Labbay.\***

**Labbay** = At your service

B. Yes, please.

A. **Bir stakan kofe, iltimos.\***

**Iltimos** = Please

**Stakan** = Cup

A. A cup of coffee, please.

B. **Kechirasiz, aka. Bizda kofe yo'q, lekin choy bor.**

B. Sorry, sir. We do not have coffee, but we have tea.

B) Make up similar dialogues using the words and word combinations that are in the box.

1. bir stakan kofe – bir piyola\* choy

2. bir stakan sut – suv/kofe

3. bir stakan apelsin sharbati – olma sharbati

4. palov va salat – lag'mon va non

\* Note: Uzbeks drink tea out of a Chinese-style tea cup called a *piyola*, they drink pretty much everything else out of a *stakan*, or a regular cup/glass.



4. Listen to the following dialogue that takes place at a restaurant. Follow along in your workbook, paying attention to the new words. Role-play the dialogue. You can substitute some words with any food from the “Small World Restaurant” menu.

A. **Assalomu alaykum, aka. Nima yeysiz?\***

**Nima** = What

**Ye-** = To eat

A. Hello, sir. What will you eat?

B. **Nima taklif qilasiz?\***

**Taklif qil-** = To recommend

B. What do you recommend?

A. **Bizning qozon kabobimiz zor. Juda mazali.\***

**Juda** = Very

**Mazali** = Delicious

A. Our pan-fried mutton is great. It is very delicious.

B. **Xo'p. Qozon kabobni olaman.\***

Remember, **ol-** = to take, and **+ni** is the accusative case.

B. OK. I'll take the pan-fried mutton.

A. **Nima ichasiz?\***

**Ich-** = To drink

A. What do you want to drink?

B. **Bir stakan olma sharbati.**

B. A cup of apple juice.

A. **Muzqaymoq yeysizmi?**  
A. Will you have ice cream?

B. **Ha, iltimos.**  
B. Yes, please.

A. **Mana, schyot.\***  
A. Here is the bill.

**Mana = Here\*\***

**Schyot = Bill**

\*\* **Mana** is only used when pointing/gesturing at something, or when handing someone something.

<b>Present Tense</b>		<b>Past Tense</b>	
I drink	<b>Men ichaman</b>	I drank	<b>Men ichdim</b>
You drink	<b>Sen ichasan</b>	You drank	<b>Sen ichding</b>
He drinks	<b>U ichadi</b>	He drank	<b>U ichdi</b>
We drink	<b>Biz ichamiz</b>	We drank	<b>Biz ichdik</b>
You drink	<b>Siz ichasiz</b>	You drank	<b>Siz ichdingiz</b>
They drink	<b>Ular ichadilar</b>	They drank	<b>Ular ichdilar</b>

5. Using the restaurant menu above, tell your classmates in Uzbek what you ate and drank at a restaurant the last time you were there.



6. Listen and read along with the dialogue. Fill in the blanks with the missing word in English. Check your answers with the answer key.

1. Where did you eat last \_\_\_\_\_?
2. I ate at a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Did you eat alone?
4. No, my \_\_\_\_\_ was with me.
5. What did he eat?
6. He ate pasta and \_\_\_\_\_.
7. What did he \_\_\_\_\_?
8. He drank \_\_\_\_\_.
9. What did you \_\_\_\_\_?
10. I ate \_\_\_\_\_ and fried potatoes.
11. What did you drink?
12. I drank \_\_\_\_\_.



7. Below are some table service items. Listen and repeat after the speaker.



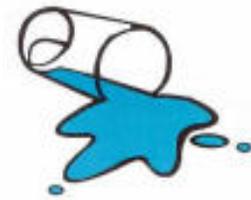
Plate  
Tarelka



Bowl  
Kosa



Tea Cup  
Piyola



Glass  
Stakan



Knife  
Pichoq



Fork  
Vilka



Spoon  
Qoshiq



Napkin  
Salfetka

8. Match the English words in the left column with the Uzbek equivalents in the right column. Check your work with the answer key.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. Plate   | A. Qoshiq   |
| 2. Bowl    | B. Stakan   |
| 3. Tea Cup | C. Pichoq   |
| 4. Glass   | D. Vilka    |
| 5. Knife   | E. Kosa     |
| 6. Fork    | F. Tarelka  |
| 7. Spoon   | G. Salfetka |
| 8. Napkin  | H. Piyola   |



9. Listen to the following model and repeat after the speaker. Compose similar sentences using the words below.

**Model: A. Menda qoshiq yo'q. Qoshiq olib kelib bera olasizmi?\***

A. I do not have a spoon. Could you bring a spoon, please?

**B. Ha, albatta. Mana, qoshiq.**

B. Yes, of course. Here you are.

\* Memorize this phrase wholesale, it involves some grammar we don't know yet.

1. salfetka
2. piyola
3. vilka
4. pichoq
5. stakan



10. Listen to the speaker and circle the words you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.

1. I want a glass of milk / juice.
2. We drank orange juice / apple juice at a restaurant.
3. Did you eat salad / bread?
4. They ate fried potatoes and chicken / fish.
5. She had soup and hamburger / bread and mutton.
6. Can I have a knife / fork?
7. He does not have a glass / plate.



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

1. Tell in Uzbek what you usually eat and drink for breakfast / lunch / dinner.
2. Tell in Uzbek what you ate and drank at a restaurant the last time you were there.
3. Pretend that you are at a restaurant now. What would you say in Uzbek if you wanted to order salad and fried potatoes? You also want a cup of coffee, and you need a fork and a napkin. What would you say in Uzbek if you did not know what to choose? Role-play the dialogue with your classmate playing the waiter.
4. Read and translate the following text into English, then answer the questions that follow in complete sentences in Uzbek. Check the answer key to review your translation and check your answers.

Juma kuni ishdan keyin mening akam, ota-onam va o'zim "Small World" degan restoranga bordik U bank qarshisida joylashgan. Ofitsiant bizga palov, non va choy taklif qildi. Akam qozon kabob va kartoshka yedi va choy ichdi. Onam salat va gamburger yedi. U olma sharbati ichdi. Ovqatdan keyin muzqaymoq yedi. Otam tovuq go'shti va sho'rva yedi. U kofe ichdi. Men tovuq go'shti va salat yedim. Ovqat mazali edi! Biz yaxshi dam oldik.

1. Oila qachon restoranga bordi?
2. Restoran qayerda joylashgan?
3. Ofitsiant nima taklif qildi?
4. Akam nima yedi?
5. U nima ichdi?
6. Onam palov va salat yedimi?
7. U apelsin sharbati ichdimi yoki olma sharbatimi?
8. Ovqatdan keyin muzqaymoq yedimi?
9. Otam nima yedi?
10. U vino ichdimi?
12. Yaxshi dam oldikmi?

## Vocabulary List

Apple Juice	Olma Sharbati
Bowl	Kosa
Ice Cream	Muzqaymoq
Coffee	Kofe
Tea Cup	Stakan
Fork	Vilka
Fried	Qovurilgan
Glass	Stakan
Knife	Pichoq
Napkin	Salfetka
Orange Juice	Apelsin Sharbati
Plate	Tarelka
Please	Iltimos
Salad	Salat
Soup	Sho'rva
Spoon	Qoshiq
Tea	Choy
Beef	Mol Go'shti
Hamburger	Gamburger
Here's a...	Mana...
To Drink	Ich-
To Eat	Ye-
To Recommend	Taklif Qil-
Delicious	Mazali
Very Well	Juda Yaxshi
Very	Juda
At your service.	Labbay.
Sorry	Kechirasiz
Bill	Schyot
Wine	Vino
Beer	Pivo

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 6

1. Where did you eat on Sunday?
2. I ate at a restaurant.
3. Who did you eat with?
4. I ate with my brother.
5. What did he eat?
6. He ate bread and fish.
7. What did he drink?
8. He drank tea.
9. What did you eat?
10. I ate chicken and potatoes.
11. What did you drink?
12. I drank coffee.

### Exercise 8

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. Plate   | F Tarelka  |
| 2. Bowl    | E Kosa     |
| 3. Tea Cup | H Piyola   |
| 4. Glass   | B Stakan   |
| 5. Knife   | C Pichoq   |
| 6. Fork    | D Vilka    |
| 7. Spoon   | A Qoshiq   |
| 8. Napkin  | G Salfetka |

### Exercise 10

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| 1. Bir stakan sut, iltimos.            | milk                       |
| 2. Biz restoranda olma sharbat ichdik. | apple juice                |
| 3. Siz non yedingizmi?                 | bread                      |
| 4. Ular kartoshka va baliq yedilar.    | fish                       |
| 5. U non va qozon kabob yedi.          | bread and pan-fried mutton |
| 6. Pichoq olib kelib bera olasizmi?    | knife                      |
| 7. Uning stakani yo'q.                 | glass                      |

### End of Lesson Exercise 4

**Check your translation of the text. Then compare your answers to the questions below.**

Friday after work, my brother, my parents and I went to the restaurant "Small World." It's located across from the bank. A waiter recommended we have pilaf, bread and tea. My brother ate pan-fried mutton and potatoes and he drank tea. My mother ate salad and a hamburger. She drank apple juice. After the meal she had ice cream. My father ate chicken and soup. He drank coffee. I ate chicken and salad. The food was delicious! We had a good time.

1. When did the family go to the restaurant?

**Oila juma kuni restoranga bordi. - The family went to the restaurant last Friday.**

2. Where is the restaurant?

**Restoran bank qarshisida joylashgan. - The restaurant is across from the bank.**

3. What did the waiter recommend?

**U palov, non va choy taklif qildi. - He recommended pilaf, bread and tea.**

4. What did my brother eat?

**U qozon kabob va kartoshka yedi. - He ate pan-fried mutton and potatoes.**

5. What did he drink?

**U choy ichdi. – He drank tea.**

6. Did my mother eat salad and a hamburger?

**Ha, salat va gamburger yedi. – Yes she ate salad and a hamburger.**

7. Did she drink orange or apple juice?

**U olma sharbati ichdi. – She drank apple juice.**

8. Did she have ice cream after the meal?

**Ha, ovqatdan keyin muzqaymoq yedi. – Yes, she had ice cream.**

9. What did my father eat?

**U tovuq go'shti, va sho'rva yedi. – He ate chicken and soup.**

10. Did he drink wine?

**Yo'q, kofe ichdi. – No, he drank coffee.**

12. Was it a wonderful evening?

**Ha, yaxshi dam oldinglar. – Yes, it was a wonderful evening.**

## Lesson 9

### Holidays, Customs, and Cultural Traditions

#### Milliy Bayram, Urf-Odat va An'analar

This lesson will introduce you to:

- How to read dates
- How to use ordinal numbers
- Names of the months
- Holidays, customs, and cultural traditions of Uzbekistan.
- 

Uzbek holidays can be divided into two main categories: national and religious. The national holidays are organized by the state, occur on a fixed date each year and generally involve concerts, fireworks and feasting. Perhaps the most important of these is *Navro'z*, the old Iranian New Year's Day. A special almost pudding-like dish called *sumalak* is prepared especially for this holiday and most families go to large concerts and celebrations in the cities. The religious holidays are, of course, Islamic in nature. They are based on the lunar calendar and, as such, their dates vary from year to year. There are two major religious holidays: 'Id al-Fitr (*Ramazon Hayiti* in Uzbek) and 'Id al-Adha (*Qurbon Hayiti* in Uzbek). *Katta Hayit* occurs directly after the Islamic month of fasting, Ramadan (*Ramazon* in Uzbek), and is marked by major feasting. *Qurbon Hayiti* generally involves the slaughtering of an animal (most often a sheep) and sharing of the meat amongst family, friends and the poor.

To form an ordinal number in Uzbek you simply add the suffix *+inchi* to the end of any cardinal number. The only exception to this is the *+inchi* becomes *+nchi* when added onto numbers ending in a vowel. Otherwise, there are no exceptions or irregularities at all.



1. Listen and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook.

One	Bir
First	Birinchi
Two	Ikki
Second	Ikkinchi
Three	Uch
Third	Uchinchi
Four	To'rt
Fourth	To'rtinchi
Five	Besh
Fifth	Beshinchi
Six	Olti
Sixth	Oltinchi
Seven	Yetti
Seventh	Yettinchi
Eight	Sakkiz
Eighth	Sakkizinchi
Nine	To'qqiz
Ninth	To'qqizinchi
Ten	O'n
Tenth	O'ninchi

2. Fill in the blanks to complete the sentences, using the words located in the box. Check your answers with the answer key.

beshinchi    ikkinchi    birinchi    oltinchi    uchinchi    yettinchi    to'rtinchi

1. Yakshanba haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.
2. Dushanba haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.
3. Seshanba haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.
4. Chorshanba haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.
5. Payshanba haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.
6. Juma haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.
7. Shanba haftaning \_\_\_\_\_ kuni.



**3. Listen to the ordinal numbers in tens and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook.**

Twenty	<b>Yigirma</b>
Twentieth	Yigirmanchi
Thirty	O'ttiz
Thirtieth	O'ttizinchi
Forty	Qirq
Fortieth	Qirqinchi
Fifty	Ellik
Fiftieth	Elliginchi
Sixty	Oltmish
Sixtieth	Oltmishinchi
Seventy	Yetmish
Seventieth	Yetmishinchi
Eighty	Sakson
Eightieth	Saksoninchi
Ninety	To'qson
Ninetieth	To'qsoninchi
One hundred	Yuz
One hundredth	Yuzinchi
One thousand	Ming
One thousandth	Minginchi

**4. Read the following ordinal numbers in Uzbek.**

10<sup>th</sup>, 40<sup>th</sup>, 1<sup>st</sup>, 337<sup>th</sup>, 22<sup>nd</sup>, 7<sup>th</sup>, 14<sup>th</sup>, 87<sup>th</sup>, 1234<sup>th</sup>

**5. The perfect and pluperfect tenses in Uzbek.**

First of all, in English the perfect tense is generally represented by 'have' as in 'I have gone.' The pluperfect tense is represented by 'had' as in 'I had gone.' The Uzbek equivalent of the perfect is not 100% equal to the English version; there are some differences. Basically, in Uzbek this tense is used to describe actions which happened a ways back in time, which the speaker didn't see and which continue to have an effect on the present. Thus in Uzbek the phrase 'I was born on...' uses the perfect ('I have been born on...') whereas the English uses the simple past tense. Bear this in mind when dealing with the Uzbek perfect. The pluperfect however is almost identical to its English counterpart.

The perfect is formed by adding the suffix **-gan**+(pronominal suffix) to the verb root. To make the verb negative ('I haven't gone to...') you simply add the negative suffix **-ma** before the **-gan**. Below is a conjugation of the verb 'to go' (**bor-**).

Men borganman	Biz borganmiz
Sen borgansan	Siz borgansiz
Siz borgansiz	Sizlar borgansizlar
U borgan	Ular borganlar

As you probably remember from chapter five, the past tense of the verb ‘to be’ is formed with the root *e-*. This knowledge is necessary to form the Uzbek pluperfect. The basic form is: V-*gan e-*(past tense and possessive markers). Below is a conjugation table with *bor-*.

Men borgan edim	Biz borgan edik
Sen borgan eding	Siz borgan edingiz
Siz borgan edingiz	Sizlar borgan edinglar
U borgan edi	Ular borgan edilar

The negative form of this tense is also formed by adding the usual *-ma* after the *-gan*. You should recognize a similar construction in the past tense form of ‘to want to...’ as we saw in chapter seven (V-*moqchi e-*(past tense and person markers).



**6. Listen to the names of the months and repeat after the speaker.**

January	<b>yanvar</b>
February	fevral
March	mart
April	aprel
May	may
June	iyun
July	iyul
August	avgust
September	sentyabr
October	oktyabr
November	noyabr
December	dekabr*



\* Note: months are not capitalized in Uzbek.

**7. Look at the picture and say the dates and days of the week in Uzbek. Practice saying the different dates, days, and months through the year.**

Model: Today is the 15<sup>th</sup> of April 1999. It is Thursday.

Bugun 15-aprel, 1999 yil. Bugun chorshanba.\*

\* *Bugun* = today. Note how the *+inchi/+nchi* is expressed with a – between the number and month (or year).



**8. Listen as the speaker reads the following years. Repeat after the speaker.**

1925 – nineteen twenty-five      1925-yil – bir ming to'qqiz yuz yigirma beshinchi yil

1900 – nineteen hundred          1900-yil – bir ming to'qqiz yuzinchi yil

2004 – two thousand four          2004-yil – ikki ming to'rtinchi yil\*

\* *Yil* = year.

**9. Read the following years in Uzbek.**

2001      1987      1960      1945      2000      1700      1516



**10. Listen to the names of Uzbek holidays and repeat after the speaker. Follow along in the workbook.**

**1. Iranian New Year's Day – Navro'z (21-mart)**

**2. Independence Day – Mustaqillik Kuni (1-sentyabr)**

**3. Women's Day – Xotin-Qizlar Kuni (8-mart)**



**11. Listen to the speakers talk about their dates of birth. Follow along in the workbook.**



1. When were you born?  
Qachon tug'ilgansiz?

I was born on the  
11<sup>th</sup> of June, 1936.

Men 1936-yil, 11-iyunda  
tug'ilganman.



2. When were you born?  
Qachon tug'ilgansiz?

I was born on the  
31<sup>st</sup> of July, 1960.

Men 1960-yil, 31-iyulda  
tug'ilganman.



3. When were you born?  
**Qachon tug'ilgansiz?**

I was born on the  
23<sup>rd</sup> of January, 1987.

Men 1987-yil, 23-yanvarda  
tug'ilganman.

**12. Working in pairs or in small groups, ask your partner when he/she was born. Use the model below.**

Model: A. I was born on the 15<sup>th</sup> of February, 1982. When were you born?

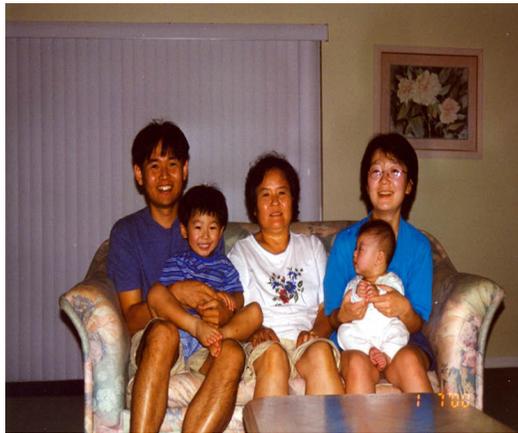
A. Men 1982-yil, 15-fevralda tug'ilganman. Siz qachon tug'ilgansiz?

B. I was born on the 4<sup>th</sup> of September, 1979.

B. Men 1979-yil, 4-sentyabrda tug'ilganman.

**13. Look at the picture below and imagine that this is your family. Describe each member. Use the model below. You can use real pictures of your family.**

**Model:** This is my brother. His name is Bahodir. He is 21 years old. He was born on the 12<sup>th</sup> of March, 1985.  
**Bu mening ukam. Uning ismi Bahodir. U 21 yoshda. U 1985-yil, 12-martda tug'ilgan.**



**14. Read and translate the following text into English, then answer the questions below in English. Check your work with the answer key.**

Mening ismim Anvar. Men O'zbekistondanman. Toshkentda yashayman. Mening katta oilam bor: xotinim, ikki bolam va ota-onam. Biz katta uyda yashaymiz. Xotinim o'ttiz besh yoshda. U 1970-yil, 23-noyabrda, tug'ilgan. U kasalxonada vrach bo'lib ishlaydi. Mening bolalarim talaba. Ular maktabda o'qiydilar.

Qizim 1992-yil, 26-aprelda tug'ilgan. O'g'lim sakkiz yoshda. U 1998-yil, 1-mayda tug'ilgan. Mening onam juda qari. U yetmish sakkiz yoshda. 1928-yil, 22-noyabrda tug'ilgan. Otam yetmish to'qqiz yoshda. U

1927-yil, 25-avgustda tug'ilgan. Ular ishlamaydilar. Kitob o'qiydilar, televizor ko'radilar va bolalarimiz bilan o'ynaydilar.

1. Where does the family live?
2. How old is the wife?
3. When was she born?
4. What is her occupation?
5. Where does she work?
6. How many children do they have?
7. How old is the son? When was he born?
8. How old is the daughter?
9. When was she born?
10. How old is the grandmother?
11. When was she born?
12. How old is the grandfather?
13. When was he born?
14. What do the grandparents do?

When visiting someone's home for a holiday in Uzbekistan there are a few customs you should try to follow. Firstly, always enter a doorway right foot first. Never seat yourself; your host should guide you towards your seat. The seat of honor (*to'r*) at an Uzbek table is generally the seat directly across from the doorway of the room. If the host tries to seat you there and there is someone older or more respected present, make an effort to not sit there. Move one or two seats over (no matter how hard the host tries to get you into the *to'r*). And after sitting down at the table, try not to touch any of the food until a prayer has been said and you've been invited to eat the food at least three times (Uzbeks do this by saying *oling*). You'll know a prayer is being said when everyone raises their hands to their faces as if to wash. The prayer is over when they bring them back down. Of course, none of these rules apply in more informal settings amongst friends.



**15. Listen to the following conversation and repeat after the speakers, while following along in the workbook. Answer the questions that follow and then check your work with the answer key.**

A. Salom, Xurshid. Ukamning tug'ilgan kuni bu yakshanba kuni bo'ladi. Bayram qilamiz. Men sizni chaqirmoqchi edim.

*chaqir-* = to invite

B. Rahmat, Pulat. Soat nechada bo'ladi?

A. Soat besh yoki besh yarimda.

B. Adresingiz nima?

A. Navoiy ko'chasi, 10-dom, 23-kvartira.

*ko'cha* = street

B. Yo'lni tushuntirib bera olasizmi?

A. Bu ko'chadan shimol tomonga yurasiz. Navoiy ko'chasida chapga burilasiz. U ko'chadan 500 metr yurasiz va o'ngga burilasiz. Mening uyim o'ng qo'lingizda bo'ladi.

*chap* = left, *o'ng* = right

*buril-* = to turn, *qo'l* = hand

B. Nima olib kelay?

A. Hech narsa, rahmat.

1. Pulat Xurshidni nimaga chaqiradi?
2. Pulatning ukasining tug'ilgan kuni qachon bo'ladi?
3. Xurshid Pulatning uyiga soat nechada yetib boradi?\*
4. Pulatning adresi nima?
5. Xurshid Pulatning uyiga qanday boradi?
6. Xurshid nima olib keladi?

\* Yetib bor- = to arrive

**16. Working with a partner, invite him/her to your house to celebrate a holiday. Give him/her directions to get to your house. Use the dialogue above as a model.**



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

### 1. Tell in Uzbek the date when:

- you were born
- you graduated from high school
- your wedding was
- your child was born
- you joined the military

### 2. Give the names of Uzbekistan's holidays and tell when they are celebrated in Uzbek (to be celebrated = *nishonlan-*).

### 3. Invite your roommate to a Christmas party and give him/her directions to get there.

## Vocabulary List

first	birinchi
second	ikkinchi
third	uchinchi
fourth	to'rtinchi
fifth	beshinchi
sixth	oltinchi
seventh	yettinchi
eighth	sakkizinchi
ninth	to'qqizinchi
tenth	o'ninchi
twentieth	yigirmanchi
thirtieth	o'ttizinchi
fortieth	qirqinchi
fiftieth	elliginchi
sixtieth	oltmishinchi
seventieth	yetmishinchi
eightieth	saksoninchi
ninetieth	to'qsoninchi
hundredth	yuzinchi
January	yanvar
February	fevral
March	mart
April	aprel
May	may
June	iyun
July	iyul
August	avgust
September	sentyabr
October	oktyabr
November	noyabr
December	dekabr
to be born	tug'il-
to invite	chaqir-
address	adres
right	o'ng
left	chap
to turn	buril-
meter	metr
Come over!	Biznikiga keling!
to arrive	yetib bor-
birthday	tug'ilgan kun
wedding	nikoh to'yi
to bring	olib kel-
I wanted to invite you	Sizni ...ga chaqirmoqchi

to...	edin.
'Id al-Fitr	Ramazon Hayiti
'Id al-Adha	Qurbon Hayiti
Ramadan	Ramazon
Independence Day	Mustaqillik Kuni
Women's Day	Xotin-Qizlar Kuni
Constitution Day	Konstitutsiya Kuni
Iranian New Year	Navro'z
New Year's Day	Yangi Yil Kuni

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 2

1. birinchi first
2. ikkinchi second
3. uchinchi third
4. to'rtinchi fourth
5. beshinchi fifth
6. oltinchi sixth
7. yettinchi seventh

### Exercise 14

1. Tashkent, Uzbekistan.
2. 35.
3. November 23, 1970.
4. Doctor.
5. Hospital.
6. 2.
7. 8 years old, May 1, 1998.
8. 12 years old.
9. April 26, 1992.
10. 78.
11. November 22, 1928.
12. 79.
13. August 25, 1927.
14. Read books, watch television, and play with the grandchildren.

My name is Anvar. I am from Uzbekistan. I live in Tashkent. I have a big family: a wife, two children, and my parents. We live in a big house. My wife is 35. She was born on November 23, 1970. She is a doctor and works at the hospital. My children are students. They study at school. My daughter was born on the April 26, 1992. My son is 8 years old. He was born on the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, 1998. My mother is very old. She is 78. She was born on the 22<sup>nd</sup> of November, 1928. My father is 79. He was born on the 25<sup>th</sup> of August, 1927. They do not work. They read books, watch television, or play with our children. I have a wonderful family.

### Exercise 15

1. What is the occasion for the invitation? **Pulat Xurshidni ukasining tug'ilgan kuniga chaqiradi.**
2. What is the date? **Bu yakshanba kuni bo'ladi.**
3. What time should he arrive? **Soat besh yoki besh yarimda bo'ladi.**
4. What is the address? **Navoiy ko'chasi, 10-dom, 23-kvartira.**
5. What directions is he given to get there? **Bu ko'chadan shimol tomonga yuradi. Navoiy ko'chasida chapga buriladi. U ko'chadan 500 metr yuradi va o'ngga buriladi. Xurshidning uyi o'ng qo'lida bo'ladi.**
6. What should he bring? **Hech narsa.**

## Lesson 10

### Around the House

#### Uyda

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Basic vocabulary related to the home
- Rooms around the house
- Furniture items you may see.

The basic design of traditional Uzbek homes, or *hovlis*, was described in chapter two, here we will elaborate a bit. Nowadays most Uzbek homes have similar amenities to Western homes. A few exceptions are the existence of a separate guestroom (*mehmonxona*, also used as the living room) where guests are received, the use of an Eastern-style toilet, and the large courtyard and garden in the center of the home.



#### 1. Listen to the vocabulary below and repeat after the speaker.

Bathroom	Hojatxona*
Bedroom	Yotoqxona
Dining room	Ovqatlanish Xonasi**
Door	Eshik
Floor	Pol
Window	Deraza
Roof	Tom
Antenna	Antenna
Garage	Garaj
Office	Ofis/Kabinet***
Basement	Podval
Courtyard	Hovli
Kitchen	Oshxona
Guestroom/Living Room	Mehmonxona
One-story	Bir Qavatli
Two-story	Ikki Qavatli
First Floor	Birinchi Qavat
Second Floor	Ikkinchi Qavat

\* This is literally a restroom, a room with a toilet. A room with a shower would be *vannaxona* or *banya*.

\*\* This word is seldom used since Uzbeks traditionally eat in the kitchen, outside, or in the guestroom (depending on whether guests are present or not).

\*\*\* *Kabinet* is an office in a home, or a professor/teacher's office in a school, *ofis* is a place of business.

**2. Match the Uzbek words in the left column with their English equivalents in the right column. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. Hojatxona          | A. Basement    |
| 2. Yotoqxonona        | B. Courtyard   |
| 3. Ovqatlanish Xonasi | C. Garage      |
| 4. Eshik              | D. Guestroom   |
| 5. Pol                | E. Bathroom    |
| 6. Deraza             | F. Kitchen     |
| 7. Garaj              | G. Bedroom     |
| 8. Mehmonxonona       | H. Door        |
| 9. Kabinet            | I. Dining room |
| 10. Podval            | J. Floor       |
| 11. Hovli             | K. Office      |
| 12. Oshxonona         | L. Window      |

**To say ‘there is...’ or ‘there are...’ in Uzbek you simply use the same word we were using for ‘to have’ – *bor*. So, “There is a kitchen in my house.” = *Uyimda oshxonona bor*.**

**3. Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks from the list of words written in the box below. Check your work with the answer key.**

garaj    yotoqxonona    antenna    hovli    oshxonona    mehmonxonona va ovqatlanish xonasi

1. Tomda \_\_\_\_\_ bor.
2. Kabinet va hojatxononaning o’rtasida \_\_\_\_\_ bor.
3. Uyning oldida \_\_\_\_\_ bor.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ ning o’rtasida oshxonona bor.

**4. Draw a plan of your house and tell your partner in Uzbek the types of rooms you have and where they are located. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

**5. Match the following questions with the correct answers. Check your work with the answer key.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. Hojatxonona qayerda?                | 1. Ha, bizning kichkina garajimiz bor.     |
| B. Oshxonona qayerda?                  | 2. Yotoqxonona mehmonxononaning yonidadir. |
| C. Yotoqxonona qayerda?                | 3. Ha, bizning katta podvalimiz bor.       |
| D. Sizning ovqatlanish xonangiz bormi? | 4. Bizda uch yotoqxonona bor.              |
| E. Sizning garajingiz bormi?           | 5. Oshxonona birinchi qavatdadir.          |
| F. Sizlarda nechta yotoqxonona bor?    | 6. Hojatxonona yotoqxononaning yonidadir.  |
| G. Sizlarda podval bormi?              | 7. Yo’q, bizning ovqatlanish xonamiz yo’q. |

## Adverbial Verbs or “Converbs” in the Uzbek Language

Converbs are a completely foreign concept for most English speakers. They are basically a way of stringing together two or more consecutive actions (there are some other functions and forms, like the *V-a ol-* we covered for ‘to be able,’ but discussing all of these would go beyond the scope of this manual). So, the basic form for this converb is *V-(i)b, V-*. You can add as many of the *V-(i)b*’s into the mix as you like. An example: “I saw him and became happy.” = *Men uni ko’rib, xursand bo’ldim* (*xursand* = happy, *bo’l-* = to be (future tense) or to become (past tense)). Here ‘to see’ is the first action, and ‘to become’ is the second in a consecutive string. And another with three verbs: “I woke up in the morning, ate breakfast, and left for school.” = *Men ertalab turib, nonushta qilib, maktabga ketdim*. Note that if a verb ends in a vowel the ‘i’ in the *-(i)b* drops out.

**6. Pretend that you want to buy a house and your classmate is a real estate agent. Make up a dialogue using the model below. Work in pairs or in small groups.**

### Model:

A. I want to buy a two-story house.

A. **Men ikki qavatli uy sotib olmoqchiman.\***

B. There is a nice, small house near to the market.

B. **Bozorning yaqinida yaxshi bir kichkina uy bor.**

A. How many bedrooms does the house have?

A. **Bu uyda necha yotoqxona bor?**

B. It has one bedroom.

B. **Bir yotoqxona bor.**

A. How many bathrooms are there?

A. **Necha hojatxona bor?**

B. There is only one bathroom.

B. **Faqat bir hojatxona bor.**

A. Is there a kitchen?

A. **Oshxona bormi?**

B. Yes, there is.

B. **Ha, bor.**

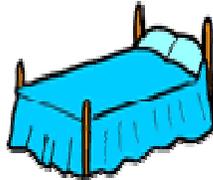
\* The Uzbek verb for 'to buy' is a good example of the converbs we just discussed. *Sot-* is 'to sell' and *ol-* is 'to take,' so to *sotib ol-* is 'to sell' (or 'to make sold') and then 'to take,' or 'to buy.' The only difference is that this verb has lost its grammatical origins and become a simple verb in and of itself, thus the absence of the commas we saw in the above examples.



**7. Familiarize yourself with these terms for furniture and furnishings. Listen and repeat after the speaker.**



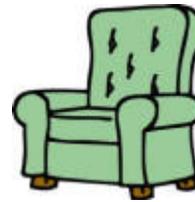
Shower  
Dush



Bed  
Krovat



Shelf  
Shkaf



Armchair  
Kreslo



Closet  
Devoriy Shkaf

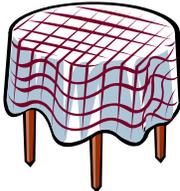


Table  
Stol



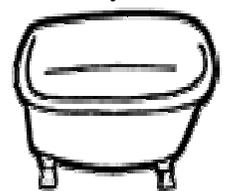
Refrigerator  
Xolodilnik



Chest  
Sandiq



Lamp  
Lampa



Bath  
Vanna



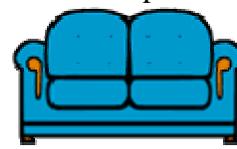
Radio  
Radio



Carpet  
Gilam



Sink  
Rakovina



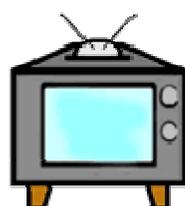
Sofa  
Divan



Stove  
Pechka



Telephone  
Telefon



Television  
Televizor



Toilet  
Tualet



Chair  
Stul



Quilt for Sitting  
**Ko'rpacha**

\* Note: A lot of the above words are Russian in origin.

8. Below is a chart with rooms you would find in a typical home. Under each room, list in Uzbek the furniture and furnishings (from the list above) that you would expect to find there. Some items will be used more than once.

Oshxona	Ovqatlanish Xonasi	Mehmonxona	Yotoqxonona	Hojatxonona

9. Using the chart above, ask each other questions in Uzbek about the furniture in your rooms.

**Model:**

1. What do you have in your kitchen?

I have a stove, a.... in my kitchen.

**1. Oshxonangizda nima bor?**

**Oshxonamda pechka, ..... bor**

2. What do you have in your dining room?

I have a table, a....in my dining room.

**2. Ovqatlanish xonangizda nima bor?**

**Oshxonamda stol, ..... bor.**



**10. Listen and read along as a speaker talks about his home and then answer the questions about the passage. Check your work with the answer key.**

Mening ismim Ulug'bek. Men xotinim va ikki bolam bilan Samarqand shahrida yashayman. Bizning ikki qavatli uyimiz bor. Mening otam biz bilan yashaydi. Uyimizning ikkinchi qavatida ikki yotoqxonona bor; bittasi ikki o'g'limizga va bittasi otamga. Men va xotinim birinchi qavatdagi yotoqxonada uxlaymiz. Uyimizda ikki hojatxonona bor. Bizning katta oshxonamizda pechka, rakovina va xolodilnik bor. Oshxonada katta stol bor va biz u yerda ovqatlanamiz. Alohida ovqatlanish xonamiz yo'q. Mehmonxonamizda divan, stol, kichkina televizor va ikkita kreslo bor. Kechqurunlari ovqatlangandan keyin oilam bilan televizor ko'raman.

- A. Bu oila qayerda yashaydi?
- B. Uyda necha odam yashaydi?
- C. Bu oilaning uyi bir qavatlimi yoki ikki qavatlimi?
- D. Uyda necha yotoqxonona bor?
- E. Birinchi qavatda necha yotoqxonona bor? U yerda kim uxlaydi?
- F. Uyda necha hojatxonona bor?
- G. Ular qayerda ovqatlanadilar?
- H. Kechqurunlari ovqatlangandan keyin oila nima qiladi?



## End-of-Lesson Tasks



**1. Listen to the speaker and circle the terms that you hear. Check your work with the answer key.**

- |                |              |             |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. bedroom     | bathroom     | living room |
| 2. lamp        | oven         | stove       |
| 3. toilet      | bathtub      | sink        |
| 4. sofa        | chair        | bed         |
| 5. carpet      | floor        | window      |
| 6. chair       | chest        | radio       |
| 7. first floor | second floor | one-story   |
| 8. garage      | basement     | roof        |

**2. You have a guest in your home. Give him/her answers, in Uzbek, to the following questions.**

Hojatxona qayerda?

Oshxona qayerda?

Uyingizda necha yotoqxon bor?

Telefon qayerda?

Uyingizda televizor bormi?

Siz odatda\* kechki ovqatni soat nechada yeysiz?

Siz odatda ertalab soat nechada turasiz?

Siz odatda soat nechada ishga ketasiz?

- *Odatda* = 'usually.'

## Vocabulary list

basement	podval
bathroom	hojatxona/vannaxona/banya
bathtub	vanna
shower	dush
bed	krovat
bedroom	yotoqxona
shelf	shkaf
chair	stul
armchair	kreslo
chest	sandiq
table	stol
dining room	ovqatlanish xonasi
door	eshik
closet	devoriy shkaf
first floor	birinchi qavat
floor	pol
garage	garaj
kitchen	oshxona
lamp	lampa
living room/guestroom	mehmonxona
dining room	ovqatlanish xonasi
one-story	bir qavatli
oven	pechka
radio	radio
carpet	gilam
second floor	ikkinchi qavat
sink	rakovina
sofa	divan
television	televizor
toilet	tualet
two-story	ikki qavatli
quilt for sitting	ko'rpacha
window	deraza

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 2

1. E	Bathroom	Hojatxona
2. G	Bedroom	Yotoqxona
3. I	Dining room	Ovqatlanish xonasi
4. H	Door	Eshik
5. J	Floor	Pol
6. L	Window	Deraza
7. C	Garage	Garaj
8. D	Guestroom	Mehmonxona
9. K	Office	Kabinet
10. A	Basement	Podval
11. B	Courtyard	Hovli
12. F	Kitchen	Oshxona

### Exercise 3

1. Tomda antenna bor.  
1. There is an antenna on the roof.
2. Kabinet va hojatxonaning o'rtasida yotoqxona bor.  
2. There is a bedroom between the office and the bathroom.
3. Uyning oldida garaj bor.  
3. There is a garage in front of the house.
4. Mehmonxona va ovqatlanish xonasining o'rtasida oshxona bor.  
4. There is a kitchen between the living room and the dining room.

### Exercise 5

- A 6
- B 5
- C 2
- D 7
- E 1
- G 3
- F 4

## Exercise 10

My name is Ulug'bek. I live with my wife and two children in Samarqand. We have a small two-story house. My father lives with us. On the second floor of the house there are two bedrooms; one for our two sons and one for my father. My wife and I sleep in the bedroom on the first floor. There are two bathrooms in our house. In our large kitchen there is an oven, a sink and a refrigerator. In the kitchen there is a large table and we eat there. We do not have a separate dining room. In our living room there is a sofa, a table, two chairs, and a small television. In the evenings after eating, I watch television with my family.

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| A. Samarqand             | Where does the family live?                                 |
| B. Besh                  | How many people live in the house?                          |
| C. Ikki qavatli          | Is it a one story or two story house?                       |
| D. Uch                   | How many bedrooms are there?                                |
| E. Bir, er-xotin         | How many bedrooms are on the first floor? Who sleeps there? |
| F. Ikki                  | How many bathrooms are there in the house?                  |
| G. Oshxonada             | Where do they eat their meals?                              |
| H. Televizor ko'radilar. | What does the family do in the evening after dinner?        |

## End of Lesson Exercise 1

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. bathroom    | hojatxona      |
| 2. lamp        | lampa          |
| 3. sink        | rakovina       |
| 4. bed         | krovat         |
| 5. window      | deraza         |
| 6. chest       | sandiq         |
| 7. first floor | birinchi qavat |
| 8. roof        | tom            |

# Lesson 11

## Weather and Seasons

### OB-HAVO VA FASLLAR

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary related to weather, seasons, and climate
- How to ask for and give temperatures
- How to understand weather reports
- How to discuss the weather and climate in Uzbek.



1. Listen to the weather terms as they are read aloud, then repeat the weather terms after the speaker.



Rain  
Yomg'ir



Sun  
Quyosh



Wind  
Shamol



Snow  
Qor



Fog  
Tuman



Clouds  
Bulut

2. Match the pictures with the correct weather term. Check your answers with the answer key.



Shamol  
Quyosh  
Yomg'ir  
Qor



**3. What do you hear? Circle the terms you hear spoken by the native speaker.**

- A. sun wind rain fog snow clouds
- B. sun wind rain fog snow clouds
- C. sun wind rain fog snow clouds



**4. Familiarize yourself with the following terms related to the weather.**

Temperature	Harorat
Celsius	Selsiy
Weather	Ob-havo
Weather forecast	Ob-havo prognozi
Weather report	Ob-havo ma'lumoti
Winter	Qish
Spring	Bahor
Summer	Yoz
Fall	Kuz
Clear	Ochiq
Cloudy	Bulutli
Overcast	Bulutli
Windy	Shamolli
Cold	Sovuq
Low temperature	Past harorat
Freezing	Muzlash darajasi
Below freezing	Muzlash darajasidan past
Warm	Iliq
High temperature	Baland harorat
Hot	Issiq
Dry	Quruq
Sunny	Quyoshli
Rainy	Yomg'irli

In Uzbek a descriptive adjective is formed by adding the ending “+li” to the noun. For example: yomg'ir – rain, yomg'ir + li = rainy (Yomg'irli).

Noun, verb pair defines event.

Verbs are commonly used in clichés describing weather patterns: yomg'ir – rain (noun), yog'adi – falls (verb), yomg'ir+yog'adi = it's raining – literally “rain is falling”. Likewise shamol - wind + esadi – blows = it's windy, literally” wind is blowing”

The verb bo'lmoq - to be - in the Future Tense – bo'ladi, when used in describing weather patterns in different places means – “usually”, or “usually does”. For instance:

In Uzbekistan winter is cold, rainy and snowy.

In Uzbek: O'zbekistonda qish fasli sovuq bo'ladi, yomg'ir bilan qor yog'adi.

Fasl – season. Fasl+i (i being the ending of the nominative case answering to the question-what?)  
- bo'ladi (verb) – defines repeat nature of the event, meaning usually.  
- yog'adi (verb) – falls – describes the nature of weather occurrence.



**5. Listen to the typical questions and responses about the weather. Repeat them after the speaker.**

- |                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| - How is the weather in December? | Dekabrda ob-havo qanday?       |
| - It's cold and snowy.            | Sovuq va qorli bo'ladi.        |
| - How is the weather in April?    | Aprelda ob-havo qanday?        |
| - It's warm and clear.            | Iliq va ochiq bo'ladi.         |
| - How is the weather in July?     | Iyulda ob-havo qanday?         |
| - It's sunny and hot.             | Serquyosh va issiq bo'ladi.    |
| - How is the weather in October?  | Oktyabrda ob-havo qanday?      |
| - It's windy and rainy.           | Shamolli va yomg'irli bo'ladi. |

**6. Read the following short dialogues on weather and match each one to a picture below. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. Bugun ob-havo qanday?

Yomg'ir yog'yapti.

2. Havo harorati necha?

Selsiy bo'yicha 28 daraja. Havo iliq va ochiq.

3. U yerda ob-havo qanday?

Qor yog'yapti va havo harorati muzlash darajasidan past.

4. Kun quyoshlimi?

Yo'q, kun sovuq va tumanli.



**A** # \_\_\_\_\_



**B** # \_\_\_\_\_



C # \_\_\_\_\_



D # \_\_\_\_\_

**7. Working with a partner, complete the dialogues according to the models in Exercise 5 and Exercise 6. Use the vocabulary given below.**

sunny	rainy	hot	cool	clear	
quyoshli	Yomg'irli	issiq	salqin	ochiq	
foggy	overcast	cloudy	below	warm	dry
			freezing		
tuman	bulutli	bulutli	muzlash	iliq	quruq
			darajasidan		
			past		

Yanvarda ob-havo qanday?  
 Yanvarda ob-havo .....va .....  
 Mayda ob-havo qanday?  
 Mayda ob-havo .....va .....  
 Avgustda ob-havo qanday?  
 Avgustda ob-havo .....va .....  
 Noyabrda ob-havo qanday?  
 Noyabrda ob-havo .....va .....

**8. Translate the following sentences into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A. Toshkentda Dekabrda yomg'ir yog'adimi?  
 B. Yo'q, Toshkentda Dekabrda qor yog'adi.
- A. Termizda Iyunda havo issiq va quyoshlimi?  
 B. Ha, Termizda Iyunda havo issiq va quyoshli.
- A. Samarqanda Noyabrda havo iliqmi?  
 B. Yo'q, Samarkanda Noyabrda havo sovuq va shamolli.
- A. Marg'ilonda Martda yomg'ir yog'adimi?  
 B. Ha, Marg'ilonda Martda yomg'ir yog'adi.



**9. Listen to the speaker and mark the statement that you hear. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. A. The weather in September is clear and sunny.  
B. The weather in September is rainy and warm.  
C. The weather in September is foggy and cold.
2. A. What is the temperature today? It is 22 degrees Celsius.  
B. What is the temperature today? It is 22 degrees Fahrenheit.  
C. What is the temperature today? It is 22 degrees.
3. A. Is it cold in spring? No, it's warm and sunny.  
B. Is it raining in spring? No, it's warm and sunny.  
C. Is it windy in spring? No, it's warm and sunny.
4. A. What is the weather forecast for tomorrow? Overcast and cold.  
B. What is the weather forecast for tomorrow? Cloudy and cold.  
C. What is the weather forecast for tomorrow? Sunny and cold.
5. A. The summers are hot and rainy. The winters are cold and snowy.  
B. The summers are hot and dry. The winters are cold and snowy.  
C. The summers are hot and sunny. The winters are cold and snowy.



**10. Listen to and familiarize yourself with the following terms related to weather and natural disasters, then repeat after the speaker. Pause the recording as many times as necessary.**



Lightning  
Chaqmoq



Thunderstorm  
Momaqaldiraq



Tornado  
Uyurma



Hurricane  
Bo'ron



Flood  
Toshqin



**11. What do you hear? Circle the three terms you hear spoken by the native speaker. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- A. hurricane lightning flood tornado thunderstorm
- B. hurricane lightning flood tornado thunderstorm
- C. hurricane lightning flood tornado thunderstorm

**12. Translate then answer the questions in English. Check your work with the answer key.**



A. Bu momaqaldiroqmi?  
Yo'q, bu .....



B. Bu toshqinmi?  
Yo'q bu .....



C. Bu bo'ronmi?  
Yo'q, bu .....



D. Bu uyurmami?  
Yo'q, bu .....



E. Bu chaqmoqmi?  
Yo'q, bu .....



### End-of-Lesson Tasks



1. Listen to the following weather report for four different cities in Uzbek. In English, fill in the chart below with the weather and temperature for each city. Pause or replay the audio if needed. Check your work with the answer key.

Play Audio



	City	Weather	Temperature
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			



2. Listen to the following weather report and answer the questions below. Check your work with the answer key.

Play Audio

1. What city is the weather report for?
2. What is the date?
3. What day of the week is this?
4. What is the forecast for today?
5. What will be the high and low temperatures for today?
6. What is the forecast for tomorrow?
7. What will be the high and low temperatures for tomorrow?
8. What time of the day tomorrow is the high temperature expected?
9. Are the temperatures in Fahrenheit, Celsius, or was it not mentioned?

**3. Working in pairs or small groups, describe the pictures. Using the vocabulary you've learned in this lesson, compose a story to match the pictures. Include the season of the year, the name of the month, the type of weather it seems to be, etc.**



## Vocabulary List

weather	ob-havo
weather forecast	ob-havo prognozi
weather report	ob-havo ma'lumoti
rain	yomg'ir
sun	quyosh
wind	shamol
snow	qor
fog	tuman
lightning	chaqmoq
thunderstorm	momaqaldiraq
tornado	uyurma
hurricane clouds	bo'ron bulutlari
rainy	yomg'irli
sunny	quyoshli
cloudy	bulutli
freezing	muzlash darajasi
clear	ochiq
temperature	harorat darajasi
fahrenheit	farenxayt
celsius	selsiy
hot	issiq
cold	sovuq
warm	iliq
dry	quruq
overcast	bulutli
windy	shamolli
winter	qish
spring	bahor
summer	yozi
fall	kuz
high	baland
low	past

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 2

Wind	Shamol
Sun	Quyosh
Rain	Yomg'ir
Snow	Qor

### Exercise 3

A. Sun	Quyosh
B. Wind	Shamol
C. Clouds	Bulut

### Exercise 6

- A 4 It's foggy and cold.
- B 1 It is overcast and raining.
- C 2 It is 28 degrees Celsius! It is very warm and clear.
- D 3 It's snowing and below freezing.

### Exercise 8

- 1. A. Is it raining in Tashkent in December? Toshkentda Dekabrda yomg'ir yog'adimi?  
B. No, it is snowing in Tashkent in December. Yo'q, Toshkentda Dekabrda qor yog'adi.
- 2. A. Is it hot and sunny in Termez in June? Termizda Iyunda havo issiq va quyoshlimi?  
B. Yes, it is hot and sunny in Termez in June. Ha, Termizda Iyunda havo issiq va quyoshli.
- 3. A. Is it warm in Samarkand in November? Samarqanda Noyabrda havo iliqmi?  
B. No, it is cold and windy in Samarkand in November. Yo'q, Samarkanda Noyabrda havo sovuq va shamolli.
- 4. A. Is it rainy in Margilan in March? Marg'ilonda Martda yomg'ir yog'adimi?  
B. Yes, it is rainy in Margilan in March. Ha, Marg'ilonda Martda yomg'ir yog'adi.

### Exercise 9

- 1. A The weather in September is clear and sunny.  
Sentyabrda ob-havo ochiq va serquyosh.
- 2. C What is the temperature today? It is 22 degrees.  
Bugun havoning harorati qanday? 22 daraja.
- 3. A Is it cold in spring? No, it's warm and sunny.  
Bahorda sovuq bo'ladimi? Yo'q, bahor serquyosh va iliq.

4. C What is the weather forecast for tomorrow? Sunny and cold.  
Ertaning ob-havo prognozi qanday? Quyoshli va sovuq.
5. C The summers are hot and sunny. The winters are cold and snowy.  
C. Yoz issiq va serquyosh bo'ladi. Qish sovuq va qorli bo'ladi.

### Exercise 11

- A. thunderstorm momaqaldiraq
- B. lightning Chaqmoq
- C. flood toshqin

### Exercise 12

- A. Is it a thunderstorm? No, it is lightning.
- B. Is it a flood? No, it is a tornado.
- C. Is it a hurricane? No, it is a thunderstorm.
- D. Is it a tornado? No, it is a flood.
- E. Is it lightning? No it is a hurricane.

### End of Lesson Exercise 1

	City	Weather	Temperature
1.	Tashkent	Cold, snow, windy	-5 Celcius
2.	Samarqand	Clear, cool	+2 Celcius
3.	Margilan	Rain,	+1 Celcius
4.	Termez	Clear, warm	+7 Celcius

O'zbekistonning Ob-Havo Markazidan kelgan xabarlarga ko'ra Toshkentda bugun qor yog'adi, sovuq shamol esib, havo harorati selsiy bo'yicha noldan besh (5) daraja past bo'ladi. Samarqandda esa havo ochiq va salqin, harorati noldan ikki (2) daraja baland. Marg'ilon shahrida yomg'ir yog'adi va harorat noldan bir (1) daraja baland. Termizda va Surxondaryo viloyatida havo ochiq va iliq bo'ladi, harorat noldan yetti (7) daraja baland.

According to the weather report from the Center for Meteorology of Uzbekistan in Tashkent, it will snow today with a cold wind and the temperature dropping to -5 degrees Celsius. In Samarkand the weather is clear and cool with the temperature at 2 degrees above zero Celsius. In the city of Margilan it will be raining with the temperature at 1 degree Celsius above zero. In Termez and Surxandarya province it is clear and warm with the temperature seven above zero Celsius.

### Exercise 2

1. What city is the weather report for? **Tashkent.**
2. What is the date? **April 21.**
3. What day of the week is this? **Friday.**
4. What is the forecast for today? **Rainy with a chance of a thunderstorm this evening.**

5. What will be the high and low temperatures for today? **High of 18 and low of 8.**
6. What is the forecast for tomorrow? **Cloudy in the morning but sunny in the afternoon.**
7. What will be the high and low temperatures for tomorrow? **High of 22 and low of 12.**
8. What time of the day tomorrow is the high temperature expected? **3:00 pm.**
9. Are the temperatures in Fahrenheit, Celsius, or was it not mentioned? **Celsius.**

Bu Toshkent shahrining 21 aprel, juma kuni uchun ob-havo ma'lumoti. Bugun yomg'ir yog'ib, kechasi momaqaldiroq bo'lish ehtimoli bor. Ertaga ertalab havo bulutli buladi lekin kunduzi quyosh chiqib ketadi. Ertaga shamol ham esadi. Havoni past harorati Selsiy bo'icha sakkiz (8) daraja bo'lib, baland harorati o'n sakkiz (18) darajaga bo'radi. Shanba kuni kunduzi soat uchda (3PM) havoni baland harorati yigirma ikki (22) daraja bo'lib, past harorati o'n ikki (12) daraja bo'ladi.

This is the weather report for Tashkent for Friday the 21<sup>st</sup> of April. Today's weather will be rainy with a chance of a thunderstorm this evening. Tomorrow's weather will be cloudy in the morning but sunny in the afternoon. It will also be windy. The low temperature for today will be 8 degrees Celsius with a high temperature of 18. Saturday's high temperature will be 22 at 3:00 in the afternoon and the low temperature will be 12 degrees.

## Lesson 12

### Personal Appearance

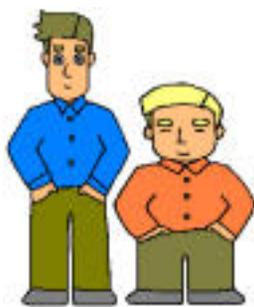
### Shahsiy Ko'rinish

This lesson will introduce you to:

- One's physical features (hair color, weight, height, etc.)
- Articles of clothing
- Colors
- Description of a person's physical appearance, including clothing
- Appropriate ways to ask about someone's appearance.



1. Look at the pictures below and familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the descriptions of people's appearances.



**Tall**  
**Baland**

**Short**  
**Past**



**Heavy**  
**To'la (Semiz\*)**

**Thin**  
**Ozg'in**



**Young**  
**Yosh**

**Old**  
**Qari**



**Short**  
**Kalta**



**Long**  
**Uzun**



**Blond**  
**Oqsariq (Malla\*\*)**



**Red**  
**Sariq**



**Gray**  
**Oqsoch**

\* Semiz usually carries negative attitude. To'la is polite, neutral expression

\*\* Malla carries negative attitude. Oqsariq is polite, neutral expression



2. Look at the pictures below and listen to the descriptions of people's appearances.



**This woman is young.**

Bu ayol yosh

**She is tall and thin.**

U baland va ozg'in



**This man is also young.**

Bu kishi ham yosh

**He has an average height and medium frame.**

U o'rtacha bo'yni va o'rtacha govdalidir

Here, and further on, the ending – *dir* – signifies the individual feature of the person. [*Govda – frame – Govda+li(suffix forming an adjective)+dir – ending*] is characterizing an individual feature. People will understand you without the ending 'dir', but using it makes for proper Uzbek



3. Look at the pictures below and familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the speaker and repeat as you follow along in the workbook.

Hair: Blond  
Brown  
Red  
Gray  
Curly  
Straight

Soch: Oqsariq  
Jigarrang  
Sariq  
Oqsoch  
Jingalak  
To'g'ri



This young woman has short brown hair.  
Bu yosh ayolning sochlari\* kalta va jigarrangdir



This young man also has short brown hair.  
Bu yigitning sochlari ham kalta va jigarrangdir

Soch –hair, in conversational Uzbek is sometimes pronounced as plural –sochlari - and both are correct. Hair color description is formed by putting the color in front of word hair or, following the word hair.



The young girl has long blond hair.  
Bu kichkina qizning sochlari oqsariqdir



The old man has gray hair.  
Bu qari odam oqsochdir

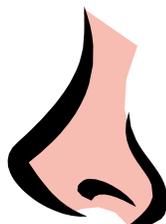
4. Working with a partner, look at the pictures and describe each of the people. See if your partner can correctly identify the body type and their color and style of hair from your description.



5. Look at the pictures below and familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the speaker and repeat as you follow along in the workbook.



Ear  
Quloq



Nose  
Burun



Eye  
Ko'z



Mouth  
Og'iz



Glasses  
Ko'zoynak



Beard  
Soqol



**Light Skin**  
Oq tanli



**Medium Skin**  
Bug'doyrang



**Dark Skin**  
Qora tanli

6. From the lists above, choose the characteristics and adjectives used to describe each feature and fill in the chart below in Uzbek. Check your answers with the answer key.

Hair	Skin	Height	Frame	Facial Features

7. In each line of text below, cross out the term that does not logically belong. Check your work with the answer key.

- |         |           |        |           |
|---------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| ko'k    | yashil    | ozg'in | jigarrang |
| past    | ko'zoynak | baland | o'rta     |
| burun   | soqol     | to'la  | ko'zlar   |
| oqsariq | kulrang   | bo'y   | qora      |



8. Listen to the descriptions of different people's appearances while reading the following dialogues. Answer the questions. Check your answers with the answer key.

1. Faridaning sochlari nima rang?

Uni sochlari jigarrangdir

Faridaning sochlari uzunmi yoki kaltami?

Kalta.

Faridaning sochlari jingalakmi yoki to'q'rimi?

To'g'ri.

2. Mardon ko'zoynak taqadimi?

Yo'q, u ko'zoynak taqmaydi.

Mardonning ko'zlari nima rang?

Mardonning ko'zlari ko'k.

3. Bahodirning bo'yi balandmi?

U o'rta bo'ylikdir.

U to'lami?

Yo'q u ozg'indir.

**Questions:**

1. How many people were described?
2. What were their names?
3. What kind of hair does Fareeda have?
4. Does Mardon wear glasses?
5. Does Mardon have brown eyes?
6. Is Bahodir short and heavy?



**9. Familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary on clothing and colors. Listen and repeat after the speaker.**

Black  
Gray  
Green  
Red  
Blue  
Yellow  
White

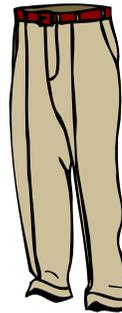
Qora  
Kulrang  
Yashil  
Qizil  
Ko'k  
Sariq  
Oq



**Red Coat**  
Qizil palto



**Gray Suit**  
Kulrang kostum



**Tan Pants**  
Bug'doyrang shim



**Blue Jeans**  
Ko'k jinsi



**Green Jacket**  
Yashil pidjak



**Brown Sweater**  
Jigarrang sviter



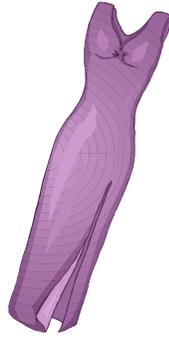
**Orange Shirt**  
Zarg'oldoq ko'ylak



**Blue T-Shirt**  
Ko'k mayka



**Green Skirt**  
Yashil yubka



**Purple Dress**  
Binafsharang  
ko'ylak



**White Sweat Suit**  
Oq sportivka



**Yellow Shorts**  
Sariq shorti



**Brown Boots**  
Jarrigang etik



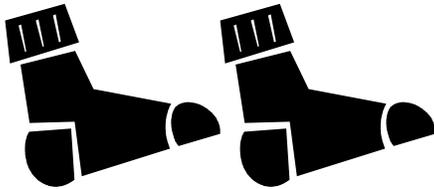
**Blue Shoes**  
Ko'k tufli



**Black Hat**  
Qora shlyapa



**Gray Uniform**  
Kulrang forma



**Black Socks**  
Qora paypoq



**White Socks**  
Oq paypoq

10. Match each description with the corresponding picture. Fill in the blank with the correct letter. Note that there could be more than one match. Check your work with the answer key.



**A**



**B**



**C**



**D**



**E**

1. .... qari ayol.
2. .... oqsariq sochlidir.
3. .... uzun va jigarrang sochlidir.
4. .... kulrang kastum-shim kiygan.\*
5. .... ko'k shim kiygan.
6. .... yosh onadir.
7. .... baland va ozg'in.
8. .... sariq ko'ylak kiygan.
9. .... ko'k mayka kiygan.
- 10..... to'la.

**\*kiygan – is wearing**

**11. Translate the following descriptions into English. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A. Zumrad baland bo'yli va ozg'indir. U o'ttiz (30) yoshda. Uning sochlari oqsariq va jingalak, ko'zlari ko'k va tani oqdir.
- B Temur baland va to'ladir. U qirq besh (45) yo'shda. Uning sochlari oq, ko'zlari ko'k va tani oqdir
- C. Bu soldatning sochi qora va kaltadir. U past bo'yli va ozg'indir.
- D. Kichkina qiz o'n (10) yoshdadir. U baland va oz'gin. U jigarrang va jingalak sochli, jigarrang ko'zli va qora tanlidir.



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

1. Describe the people you see in the pictures. For each person, include the approximate age, skin tone, color and length of hair, and what he/she is wearing.



1



2



3



4



5



6

2. Come up with a simple description for each of the people listed below. (You may substitute any individual you wish for those listed.) Be sure to include hair color and length, approximate height and age, eye color, and skin tone.

**Example:** My mother is 63 years old. She is tall and has a medium frame. She has short, gray hair and brown eyes. She has light skin. She wears glasses.

- A. Mother
- B. Father
- C. Co-worker
- D. President of the United States
- E. Your next door neighbor

3. Working in pairs, pretend that you and your partner are roommates. When you went to the store, someone came to visit you. Now you have returned. Ask your roommate questions about the visitors' appearance. Your partner will describe the him/her in Uzbek, saying how he/she looked (was he/she tall or short? Heavy or thin? What kind of hair did he/she have? What was he wearing? What color were his/her clothes?).

## Vocabulary List

average	o'rt
beard	soqol
black	qo'ra
blond	oqsariq
blue	ko'k
blue jeans	ko'k jinsi
boots	etik
brown	jigarrang
color	rang
curly	jingalak
dark	qo'ra
dress	ko'ylak
ears	quloqlar
eyes	ko'zlar
face	yuz
frame	govda
glasses	ko'zoynak
gray	kulrang
green	yashil
hair	soch
hat	shlyapa
jacket	kastum
large	katta
light	ochrang*
man	odam. erkak, erkak kishi*
medium	o'rt
mouth	og'iz
nose	burun
old	qari. eski*
pants	shim
red	qizil
shirt	ko'ylak
shoes	tufli
short	kalta
skin	ter*
skirt	yubka
small	kichkina
straight	to'gri
suit	kastum-shim
sweater	sviter
sweats	sportivka
tall	baland
thin	ozg'in
to wear	kiymoq

is wearing	kiygan
t-shirt	mayka
white	oq
woman	ayol. ayol kishi
yellow	sariq
young	yosh
mother	ona

\*Erkak, Erkak kishi – male. Kishi can also be used alone for man. Young man – yigit.

Eski – old (about object) Qari – old (about person).

Ochrang – light (about color)

oqtanli – light about complexion.

Ter – literally skin, Complexion is described with color+tanli, where tan – body, li-ending forming an adjective.

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 6

Hair	Skin	Height	Frame	Facial Features
kalta	oqtanli	baland	tula, semiz	quloq
uzun	o'rta	past	ozg'in	burun
oqsariq	qora			ko'z
qizil				og'iz
kulrang				ko'zoynak
				soqol

### Exercise 7

blue	green	<del>thin</del>	brown
ko'k	yashil	ozg'in	jigarrang
short	<del>glasses</del>	tall	average
past	ko'zoynak	baland	o'rta
nose	beard	<del>heavy</del>	eyes
burun	soqol	to'la	ko'zlar
blond	gray	<del>height</del>	dark
oqsariq	kulrang	bo'y	qora

### Exercise 8

1. How many people were described? **Three.**
2. What were their names? **Fareeda, Mardon, Bahodir.**
3. What kind of hair does Fareeda have? **Short, straight, brown.**
4. Does Mardon wear glasses? **No.**
5. Does Mardon have brown eyes? **No, he has blue eyes.**
6. Is Bahodir short and heavy? **No, average height and thin.**

1. - What color is Fareeda's hair?  
- Her hair is brown.  
- Is Fareeda's hair long or short?  
- It's short.  
- Is Fareeda's hair curly or straight?  
- It's straight.
2. - Does Mardon wear glasses?  
- No, he doesn't wear glasses.  
- What color are Mardon's eyes?  
- His eyes are blue.
3. - Is Bahodir tall?

- He is of average height.
- Is he heavy?
- No, he is thin.

### **Exercise 10**

1. D is an old woman.
2. E has blond hair.
3. B has long brown hair.
4. A is wearing a gray suit
5. E is wearing blue pants.
6. C is a young mother.
7. C is tall and thin.
8. C is wearing a yellow dress.
9. B is wearing a blue t-shirt.
10. A is heavy.

### **Exercise 11.**

1. Zumrad is tall and thin. She is 30 years old. She has blond curly hair, green eyes, and fair skin.
2. Temur is tall and heavy. He is 45 years old. He has short gray hair, blue eyes, and light skin.
3. The soldier has dark short hair. He is short and thin.
4. A young girl is 10 years old. She is tall and thin. She has long brown hair, brown eyes, and dark skin.

## Lesson 13

### Transportation

### Transport

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Verbs of motion
- Ways of asking questions regarding the different modes of transportation
- Different types of transportation available in Uzbekistan.



Uzbekistan has state owned transportation. Trains and railroads are in fair condition and the major line between the capital, Tashkent, and the second largest city, Samarkand, is electrified. The intercity bus system is fully functional but maintenance is a serious problem. Most of the buses are ten or more years old. Air travel is provided by Uzbek Airways with the best service on international destinations and fair conditions on internal routes. Airplane maintenance is a serious problem also because of state ownership. Most commonly people travel by bus and those who can afford it hire cabs, which is the second most common mode of travel after buses and trains. In the country, people travel primarily by bicycle and motorbike. It is not unusual to see a donkey cart or a person riding a donkey or a horse. Private automobile ownership is below 10% and declining despite a Daewoo assembly plant in Andijon. Roads are bad and in the winter rural roads are sometimes impassably muddy. An all wheel drive vehicle would be best.



1. Listen and repeat the following words as you read along.



Airplane  
Samolyot



Bicycle  
Velik



Ship  
Kema



Bus  
Avtobus



Car  
Mashina



Helicopter  
Vertolyot



Motorcycle  
Mototsikl



Taxi  
Taksi



Train  
Poyezd



Truck  
Gruzovik\*

*\*sometimes substituted with the brand name of the truck – Kamaz, Zil, Maz being most common*

Yurmoq -- to go somewhere in general;

piyoda -- specifically to walk on foot;

bormoq -- to go by car, train, bus etc.

ketmoq – specifically to leave;

haydamoq -- specifically to drive.

Minmoq- literally to mount – a horse, donkey etc. specifically to take (board) bus, train etc. as a passenger.

We will take bus to go to the concert - Biz kontsertga avtobus minib boramiz.

minib boramiz – will board and ride the bus - minib+boramiz = adverb+verb=2<sup>nd</sup> person plural indicative.

Adverb is formed by adding suffix “ib” to the root of the verb – min+ib =”riding the bus”

I’ll walk to the library - Men kutubxonaga piyoda boraman.

Let him drive to the gas station - Zapravkaga u haydab borsin.

Same as above two verbs are said together to express action with haydab as an adverb.

haydab+borsin = adverb+verb=3<sup>rd</sup> person singular indicative.

hayda+b (root+suffix) = “driving the vehicle”

**haydab+borsin bor+sin (root+ending) being 3<sup>rd</sup> person imperative of bormoq.**

**Bor+sin -- root+ending = 3<sup>rd</sup> person imperative**



2. Listen to the questions and answers about using different forms of transportation. Repeat after the speaker as you read along.

How do you go to work?

I go  Men	by car <b>mashinada boraman</b>	I take the  Men	Car <b>mashina olib boraman</b>	I walk  Men piyoda yuraman
	by bus <b>avtobusda boraman</b>		Bus <b>avtobus minib boraman</b>	
	by train <b>poyezdda boraman</b>		Train <b>poyezd orqali boraman</b>	
	by bicycle <b>velikda boraman</b>		Bicycle <b>velik minib boraman</b>	
	by motorcycle <b>mototsiklda boraman</b>		Motorcycle <b>mototsikl minib boraman</b>	
	by truck <b>gruzovikda boraman</b>		Truck <b>gruzovik minib boraman</b>	

*Example:* I ride a bus to school. = Men maktabga avtobusda boraman.

3. Read each statement below and match it with the correct picture. Check your work with the answer key.



1



2



3



4



5



6

- A. Men har kuni ertalab maktabga avtobusda boraman
- B. Soldatlar harbiy gruzovikda yuradilar.
- C. Yomg'ir yog'sa taksi olib boramiz.
- D. Men ishga mashinamni haydab boraman.
- E. Do'stim ishga velik bilan (velik minib) boradi.
- F. Akam(Ukam)\* mototsikl haydaydi.

*\*There is a formal word for brother in Uzbek – birodar – used in poetry and slogans. Usually Uzbeks refer to brothers by age; aka being an older brother and uka being a younger brother.*

**4. Practice creating complete sentences out of the words below. Use the following model.**

**Model: who + the verb of motion + mode of transportation + destination**

**Example: I ride a bus to school.**

**Men maktabga avtobusda boraman.**

I	motorcycle	my brother	to ride	to	school	bicycle	our parents	car
men	<b>mototsikle</b>	<b>mening akam/ukam</b>	<b>minmoq</b>	<b>+ ga</b>	<b>maktab</b>	<b>velik</b>	<b>bizning otalarimiz</b>	<b>mo-shina</b>
airport	my friend	concert	library	to drive	train	taxi	bus	to walk
<b>aeroport</b>	<b>mening o'rtog'im</b>	<b>kontsert</b>	<b>qutubxonona</b>	<b>xaydamoq</b>	<b>poyezd</b>	<b>taksi</b>	<b>avtobus</b>	<b>yur-moq</b>

**- Excuse me, I want to go to the post office. How do I get there?**

**Kechirasiz, pochtaga bormoqchi edim. Uyerga qanday yetib olsam bo'ladi?**

**- Bus number 14.**

**O'n to'rtinchi avtobusda.**

**-Thank you.**

**Rahmat sizga.**

**Compound verb bormoqchi edim – bormoqchi + edim = expresses intention to go**



**5. Listen to and read along with the following exchanges. Repeat after the speaker.**

**- Excuse me. I want to go to the library. How do I get there?**

**Kechirasiz, kutubxonaga bormoqchi edim. U yerga qanday yetib olsam bo'ladi?**

**Yetib+olsam+bo'ladi – "I am getting"**

**- Take bus number 14.**

**O'n to'rtinchi avtobusga minishingiz kerak. min+ish+ingiz – "you are boarding"**

**- Thanks.**

**Rahmat**

- You are welcome.  
Arzimaydi.

- How do I get to the hospital?

Shifoxonaga qanday yetib olsam bo'ladi? yetib olsam bo'ladi -- "I am getting"

- Take a taxi.

Taksi oling

- Thank you very much.

Katta rahmat.

- You are welcome.

Bemalol.

- Please tell me how to get to the hotel from the airport?

Aeroportdan mehmonxonaga qanday borishni tushuntirib bera olasizmi?

- Take the train.

Poyezd oling

- What number?

Nechanchi raqam?

- Train number 22.

Yigirma ikkinchi poyezd.

**6. Working with a partner, make up similar exchanges. Use the words from Exercise 5 and the pictures below to choose the destination.**



1. A. Do you take a taxi to the concert? No, I take my car.
2. B. What street should I take to the post office? 18<sup>th</sup> Street.
3. C. My parents drive their cars to work, but we take the train.



**7. Now listen to the dialogues and mark the statement that you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.**

1. A. Do you take a taxi to the concert? No, I take my car.  
B. Do you take a bus to the concert? No, I take my car.  
C. Do you take a train to the concert? No, I take my car.

2.
  - A. What bus should I take to the post office? Bus number 18.
  - B. What street should I take to the post office? 18<sup>th</sup> Street.
  - C. What exit should I take to the post office? Exit 18.
  
3.
  - A. My parents drive their cars to work, but we ride our bicycles.
  - B. My parents drive their cars to work, but we walk.
  - C. My parents drive their cars to work, but we take the train.

### At a service station



8. Familiarize yourself with the following vocabulary. Listen to the speaker and follow along in your book.

Gas	Benzin
Gas station	Benzokolonka (Zapravka)
Service station	Avtoremont
Diesel	Solyarka
Car wash	Avtomoyka
Oil	Moy
Tires	Pokrishkalar
Air	Bosim*
Water	Suv
Flat tire	Yo'rilgan pokrishka

*\*bosim, havo bosimi – air pressure. Uzbeks use bosim for air in terms of cars.*

**Uzbekistan is a metric system country and the liquid measure unit is a liter (pronounced lihtehr). Fuel is sold by liters and fuel shortages are customary.**

**1 gallon = 3.785 liters**  
**1 quart = .946 liters**  
**1 liter = 2.1 pints**  
**10 liters = 2.63 gallons**



**9. Listen to the people at a service station and find out what each needs. Circle the English equivalents of the terms you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- |           |     |     |        |       |     |          |
|-----------|-----|-----|--------|-------|-----|----------|
| <b>A.</b> | Air | Gas | Diesel | Tires | Oil | Car Wash |
| <b>B.</b> | Air | Gas | Diesel | Tires | Oil | Car Wash |
| <b>C.</b> | Air | Gas | Diesel | Tires | Oil | Car Wash |
| <b>D.</b> | Air | Gas | Diesel | Tires | Oil | Car Wash |

*\*Nasos – Russian for pump is used to define the tool and the action.*

*To pump – nasos + lash+ moq – (lash –suffix of action, moq – ending indicating verb in indefinite form)*

*\*\*Iltimos – please*



**10. Familiarize yourself with these terms identifying infrastructure.**

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Road       | Yo'l           |
| Highway    | Shosse         |
| Freeway    | Betonka        |
| Local road | Mahalliy* yo'l |
| Railroad   | Temir yo'l     |

- *Mahalliy means communal, belonging to the local community*



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

1. Tell how you would get to the following places using various modes of transportation. Try to make your story interesting and include as many details as you can.



2. Listen and write down the responses to the questions below. Check your work with the answer key

- A. –Benzinim tamom bo’ldi, zapravka qayerda?
- B. –Pokrishkam teshilib qoldi. Nima qilishim kerak?
- C. –Bir litr benzin necha pul bo’ladi (turadi)?
- D. –Sizga qancha benzin kerak?

*So'm is the Uzbek currency unit. The exchange is about 1000 so'm for 1 USD and rising.*

## Vocabulary List

air	bosim (lit. pressure)
airplane	samolyot
bicycle	velik
boat	qayiq
bus	avtobus
but, and	esa
car	mashina
car wash	avtomoyka
concert	konsert
diesel	solyarka
freeway	betonka
liter	litr
gas	benzin,
helicopter	vertolyot
highway	shosse
library	kutubxona
local road	mahalliy yo'l
motorcycle	mototsikl
need	kerak
oil	moy
railroad	temir yo'l
service station	avtoremont
school	maktab
ship	kema
taxi	taksi
tire/tires	pokrishka(lar)
train	poyezd
truck	guzovik
water	suv
work	ish
please, polite form of address	iltimos

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 3

1. F. My brother rides a motorcycle.
2. D. I drive my car to go to work.
3. E. My friend rides his bike to work.
4. B. Soldiers ride in an army truck.
5. C. When it's raining, we take a taxi.
6. A. I take the bus to school every morning.

### Exercise 7

1. A. Do you take a taxi to the concert? No, I take my car.  
Siz konsertga taksi olasizmi? Yo'q, men mashinamni olib boraman.
2. B. What street should I take to the post office? 18<sup>th</sup> Street.  
Pochtaga qaysi ko'chadan borishim kerak? O'n sakkizinchi ko'chadan\*\*
3. C. My parents drive their cars to work, but we take the train.  
Mening ota-onam ishlariga mashinalarini haydab boradilar, biz esa poyezd orqali boramiz.

*\*qaysi – which, what*

*\*\*streets in Uzbekistan go by names, not by numbers*

*\*\*\*esa – but, and*

### Exercise 9

- |    |        |          |
|----|--------|----------|
| A. | Air    | Tires    |
| B. | Gas    | Oil      |
| C. | Gas    | Car Wash |
| D. | Diesel | Oil      |

- A. I need some air for my tires.
- B. I need 10 gallons of gas and 1 quart of oil.
- C. I need a car wash and gas.
- D. I need diesel for my car and oil.

### End of Lesson Exercise 2

- A. - I have no gas. Where is the gas station?  
- Two kilometers down the freeway.
- B. - I have a problem with my tire. What should I do?  
- I'll put some air in the tires for you.

C. - How much is the gas per liter/gallon?

- \$2.35 a liter.

D. – How much gas do you want?

- 12 liters please.

- Benzinim tamom bo'ldi, zapravka qayerda?

- Betonkada borsa, ikki kilometr na'rida

- Pokrishkam teshilib qoldi. Nima kilishim kerak?

- Men pokrishkalarangizni nasoslab qo'yaman.

- Benzinning bir litri necha pul bo'ladi (turadi)?

- Bir litr 350 (uch yuz ellik) so'm\* turadi

- Sizga qancha benzin kerak?

- Iltimos o'n ikki litr bering.

## Lesson 14

### Travel

### Sayoxat

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary related to travel
- How to buy a train, bus, or airplane ticket
- How to understand schedules
- Border crossing and roadblock procedures.



Due to the state ownership of the transportation systems in Uzbekistan ticket sales are centralized. Therefore sales are routinely disrupted by state officials who, abusing their positions of power, procure the best accommodations for themselves and their families and extended family members and others close to them. There is an extensive black market of air tickets and sometimes foreigners are better off utilizing services of one of the self-proclaimed “brokers”. These “brokers” who employ their personal ties to the staffers of the state ticket office can deliver tickets in a much shorter time, thus sparing their “clients” the uncertainties of waiting in line. The rail and bus ticket situation is somewhat better but is highly volatile as well. The Western definition of first or business class is applicable strictly to the international flights, while internal flights have the same conditions for everyone. If one can afford to hire a cab there are plenty of newer cars going between the major cities and it can make for a decent ride since street crime is very low and gun ownership is non-existent.



1. Listen to the following dialogue about buying a ticket at a train station, and read along in the workbook.

Soldier: Excuse me, ma'am.  
Askar\* **Kechirasiz xonim**  
Ticket Seller: Can I help you?  
Kassachi **Xo'sh xizmat?**  
Soldier: I need to buy a ticket to Khiva.  
Askar: **Menga Xivagacha chipta kerak edi.**  
Ticket Seller: Departing on what day?  
Kassachi **Qaysi kunga?**  
Soldier: Today.  
Askar **Bugunga**  
Ticket Seller: One-way or roundtrip?  
Kassachi **Sizga bir tomonli yoki ikki tomonlimi?**  
Soldier: Roundtrip.  
Askar **Ikki tomonli**  
Ticket Seller: First class or second class?  
Kassachi **Kupemi yoki umumiyymi?**  
Soldier: Second class, please.  
Askar **Itimos, umumiy bering.**  
Ticket Seller: Returning on what day?  
Kassachi **Qachon qaytasiz?**  
Soldier: Friday  
Askar **Juma kuni**  
Ticket Seller: Morning, afternoon, or evening?  
Kassachi **Juma kuni ertalab, kunduzi yoki kechqurunmi?**  
Soldier: Afternoon  
Askar **Kunduzi**  
Ticket Seller: Twenty-two dollars, please. The next train leaves in one hour from platform number 5.  
Kassachi **Yigirma ikki ming so'm bo'ladi. Keyingi poyezd bir soatdan keyin beshinchi platformadan jo'naydi.**  
Soldier: Thank you. What is the train number?  
Askar **Rahmat sizga. Poyezdning raqami nechanchi?**  
Ticket Seller: 76  
Kassachi **Yetmish oltinchi**  
Soldier: Is this an express train?  
Askar **Bu tez poyezdmi?**  
Ticket Seller: Yes, it is an express train.  
Kassachi **Ha, bu tez poyezd.**  
\*soldier -- askar or soldat

The adverbs *kirish* and *chiqish* are used to define the act of entering the rail car, bus, plane, or automobile.

To board – min-, chiq-, o'tir-;

to depart – jo'na-;

arrive – kel-;

arrival – kelish;

to leave - ket-;

come back/return, qaytib kel-

must/need – lozim, kerak

2. Read and practice the dialogue with a partner. Take turns being the Ticket Seller and Soldier.

3. Role-play the dialogue. You can substitute the name of a city you need to buy a ticket to, the time and day of arrival and departure, and the price of the ticket.

Future tense in Uzbek forms by adding “ah” after the verb root and before the ending. The train will leave... Poyezd ket+a+di. If you say it without “ah” – ket+di it forms Past Tense. Poyezd ketdi – The train left.



4. Listen to the following statements and read along in the workbook.

Attention, passengers! The next express train to Urganch will depart from platform 10 in 15 minutes.

**Diqqat,diqqat! Keyingi Urganchga ketadigan tez poyezd o'ninchi platformadan o'n besh minutdan keyin jo'naydi.**

Attention, passengers! The next local train will arrive at platform 10 in 5 minutes.

**Diqqat,diqqat! Keyingi mahalliy poyezd o'ninchi platformaga besh minutdan keyin keladi.**

Attention, passengers! Flight number 92 from Fargona will be one hour late. Please check the schedule for updates.

**Diqqat,diqqat! Farg'onadan keladigan to'qson ikkinchi reys bir soat kech keladi. Iltimos qatnash jadvalini tekshiring.**

Attention, passengers! The bus from Bukhara will arrive at terminal 3 in 10 minutes.

**Diqqat,diqqat! Buxorodan keladigan avtobus uchinchi perronga o'n minutdan keyin keladi.**

5. Match each picture with the correct Uzbek term by writing the term below the correct picture. Check your work with the answer key.



A \_\_\_\_\_



B \_\_\_\_\_



C \_\_\_\_\_



D \_\_\_\_\_



E \_\_\_\_\_



F \_\_\_\_\_



G \_\_\_\_\_



H \_\_\_\_\_

Passengers  
 Baggage  
 Platform  
 Schedule  
 Ticket  
 Check-in counter  
 Waiting area  
 Gate

Yo'lovchilar  
 Yuk  
 Platforma  
 Qatnash jadvali/jadval  
 Chipta  
 Registratsiya  
 Kutish zali  
 Darvoza

In Uzbek obligation is expressed by adding the nouns “kerak” or “lozim” (loh-zim) after the verb in phrases stating the requirements. Kerak and lozim are synonyms meaning must, need.  
 Example: Men ishga borishim kerak -- I need to go to work.



**6. Listen to the following statements and read along in the workbook.**

You must have a ticket to board the train.

**Poyezdga chiqish uchun chiptangiz bo'lishi kerak**

You must have a ticket to board the airplane.

**Samolyotga chiqish uchun chiptangiz bo'lishi kerak**

Passengers for flight number 25 must go to gate 14.

**Yigirma beshinchi reys bilan ketadigan yo'lovchilar o'n to'rtinchi darvozaga borishlari kerak**

You must pay for your ticket.

**Chipta uchun pul to'lashingiz lozim**

Passengers have to wait in the waiting area.

**Yo'lovchilar kutish zalida kutishlari lozim**

You have to wait for your luggage at the baggage claim area.

**Yuklaringizni olish uchun yuk olish zalida kutishingiz kerak**

**7. Fill in the blanks with the correct term from the list below. Check your answers with the answer key.**

Attention	Diqqat
Baggage claim area	Yuk olish zali
Express	Tez /ekspres
First class	Birinchi klass/ biznes
Platform	Platforma
Schedule	Jadval
Second class	Ikkinchi klass/umumiy
Ticket window	Chipta oynasi/ Kassa
Gate	Darvoza

- A. Chipta sotib olish uchun \_\_\_\_\_ ga boring.
- B. Yuklaringizni olish uchun \_\_\_\_\_ ga boring
- C. \_\_\_\_\_! Avtobusga chiqish uchun yo'lovchilarning chiptalari bo'lishi kerak.
- D. Reysingizning jo'nash vaqtini tekshirish uchun \_\_\_\_\_ ga qarang.
- E. \_\_\_\_\_ poyezd tezroq yuradi, chunki u mahalliy stantsiyalarda to'xtamaydi.
- F. Har bir poyezd boshqa \_\_\_\_\_ ga keladi
- G. Diqqat, yo'lovchilar! Yetti yuz yigirma beshinchi (725) reys A o'n \_\_\_\_\_ eti (A17) \_\_\_\_\_ dan jo'naydi.

**8. For each question below, there is a corresponding answer. Match them by writing the letter of each question on the blank line in front of the appropriate answer. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>A.</b> Mahalliy poyezdga chiptani qayerdan sotib olish mumkin?  | <b>1.</b> ____ Ha, iltimos  |
| <b>B.</b> Keyingi Buxoroga ketadigan avtobus qachon jo' naydi?     | <b>2.</b> ____ Keyingi Buxoroga ketadigan avtobus yig'irma minutdan keyin jo' naydi |
| <b>C.</b> Xivaga birinchi klass chipta qancha turadi?              | <b>3.</b> ____ Birinchi platformaning yonidagi chipta oynasidan.                    |
| <b>D.</b> Siz oyna yonidan joy xohlaysizmi?                        | <b>4.</b> ____ U poyezd o'n minutdan keyin o'n oltinchi platformaga keladi.         |
| <b>E.</b> Termezdan keladigan tez poyezd qaysi platformaga keladi? | <b>5.</b> ____ Yetmish ikki ming so'm bo'ladi.                                      |

**9. Role-play the short dialogues from Exercise 8. Change the cities and numbers.**



**10. What do you hear? Listen to the speaker and determine which statement is spoken. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A You must have a ticket to board the bus.  
B You must have a ticket to board the ferry.
- A I need a business class roundtrip ticket to Moscow.  
B I need a business class one-way ticket to Moscow.
- A. The next express train will depart from platform 15 in 10 minutes.  
B The next local train will depart from platform 15 in 10 minutes.

## At border crossings and roadblocks



### 11. Listen to these new words and phrases.

Border	Chegara
Customs	Bojhona
Checkpoint	O'tkazish Tekshiruv Punkti/KPP*
Roadblock	To'siq/ Blokpost
Passport	Pasport
Drivers' license	Prava
Documents	Hujjatlar
Papers	Qog'ozlar
ID card	Hujjat
Show me	Ko'rsating
Give me	Bering
Search	Tintuv
Inspect	Tekshir
Inspection	Teksiruv/ Taftish
Trunk (of a car)	Bagajnik
Proceed	O'ting
Rental (car)	Arendaga olingan mashina
Citizen	Fuqaro

\*KPP (kah-peh-peh) is Russian abbreviation for passage control point adopted and used in modern Uzbekistan as a name for checkpoints.

### 12. At roadblocks and border crossings, officials usually ask questions about driver identification and vehicle documents. Try to match up the Uzbek border crossing requests and questions with their English equivalents. Check your work with the answer key.

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Texpasportingizni ko'rsating | A Give me your driver's license. |
| 2. Pasportingizni bering        | B Do you have an ID card?        |
| 3. Siz qayerdan bo'lasiz?       | C Why do you need to go there?   |

4. U yerga nima uchun borishingiz kerak? D Show me your car papers.
5. Pravangizni bering E Give me your passport.
6. Hujjatingiz bormi? F Where are you from?



**13. Listen to and read the following dialogue at a border crossing, and then answer the questions below. Try to guess the meaning of unknown words from the context. Check your work with the answer key.**

- Customs Official: Give me your passport and driver's license.  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Pasportingiz va pravangizni menga bering**
- Car Driver: OK  
 Xaydovchi **Xo'p bo'ladi/Xo'p mayli\***
- CO: Are you a U.S. citizen?  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Siz Amerikaning fuqarosimisiz?**
- CD: Yes.  
 Xaydovchi **Ha**
- CO: Do you have papers for this car?  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Mashinangizning texpasporti bormi?**
- CD: Yes. It is a rental car.  
 Xaydovchi **Ha, bu arendaga olingan mashina.**
- CO: Where are you going?  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Qayerga borasiz?**
- CD: To Samarqand.  
 Xaydovchi **Samarqandga**
- CO: How long will you be there?  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Samarqandda necha kun bo'lasiz?**
- CD: Ten days.  
 Xaydovchi **O'n kun**
- CO: What will you do there?  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Samarqandda nima qilasiz?**
- CD: I will visit my family.  
 Xaydovchi **Qarindoshlarimnikida mehmon bo'laman**
- CO: Please open the trunk. We need to do an inspection.  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Iltilimos, bagajningizni oching. Taftish qilishimiz kerak.**
- CD: OK.  
 Xaydovchi **Xo'p mayli**
- CO: OK, thank you. You may proceed.  
 Bojhona ofitseri **Bo'ldi, sizga rahmat, O'tishingiz mumkin.**
- \* Xo'p bo'ladi/Xo'p mayli these two phrases are expressing compliance.

- A. Where is the driver from?
- B. Does the driver own the vehicle he is driving?
- C. Where is the driver going?
- D. Why is he going there?
- E. How long will he be there?
- F. What does the guard ask the driver to do at the end?
- G. Why?

**14. Work with a partner. Take turns role-playing the Customs Official and the Car Driver.**



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

### 1. Translate the following sentences into English. Check your work with the answer key.

- A. Sizga iltimos, men Farg'onaga ikki tomonli chipta sotib olishim kerak  
Men o'n ikkinchi noyabrda ketaman va uchinchi dekabrda qaytib kelaman.  
Men oyna yonidan joy xohlayman.
- B. Bu tez po'ezdmi?
- C. Buxoroga ketadigan avtobus nechanchi platformadan jo'naydi?
- D. O'ttiz to'rtinchi (34<sup>th</sup>) poyezd uchinchi platformadan besh minutdan keyin jo'naydi.

### 2. Work with a partner or in a small group. Look at the pictures and come up with a story. Do you think these people are arriving or departing? Do you think they are on time? Is their flight late? Mention their names, ages, professions, what they are wearing, and where and why they need to fly or where they are arriving from. Also, tell how they got to the airport (by car, by bus, by train).



## Vocabulary List

arriving/arrivals	kelish
attention	diqqat
baggage	yuk
border	chegara
bus station	avto'vokzal
buy	sotib ol-
checked	tekshirgan
checkpoint	o'tkazish tekshiruv punkti /kpp
citizen	fuqaro
customs	bojxona
delay/ed	kech qolgan
departing/departures	jo'nash
documents	hujjatlar
driver's license	prava
express	tez/ekspres***
first class	birinchi/biznes klass
flight	reys
fly	uchish
give me ...	bering
id card	hujjat
inspect	tekshir-
inspection	tekshirish
inspector	inspektor
late	kech qolgan
one-way	bir tomonli
on-time	vaqtida
papers	qog'ozlar
passenger	yo'lovchi
passport	pasport
platform	platforma
proceed	o'ting
rental car	arendaga olingan mashina
roadblock	to'siq /blokpost
roundtrip	ikki tomonli
schedule	jadval
second class	ikkinchi klass/umumiy*
show me ....	ko'rsating
terminal	vokzal/aeroport**
ticket	chipta
ticket window	chipta oynasi
to board	kirish/chiqish
to leave	ket-
to return/come back	qayta kel-
train station	vokzal

trunk (of a car)	bagajnik
update	o'zgarish
waiting area	kutish zali
window seat	oyna yonida joy

\*When taking train – umumiy (general) means not compartment, just a berth.

\*\* Vokzal is a train terminal.

\*\*\*ekspres is used as much as tez (fast)

Aeroport – airport

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 5

A Schedule	Jadval
B Check-in counter	Registrasiya
C Platform	Platforma
D Ticket	Chipta
E Passengers	Yo'lovchilar
F Baggage	Yuk
G Gate	Darvoza
H Waiting area	Kutish zali

### Exercise 7

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| A. Chipta oynasi  | Go to the <b>ticket window</b> to buy the tickets.                       |
| B. Yuk olish zali | You can get your baggage at the <b>baggage claim area</b> .              |
| C. Diqqat         | <b>Attention!</b> All passengers must have a ticket to board the bus.    |
| D. Jadval         | Check the <b>schedule</b> to find out when your flight departs.          |
| E. Tez/ekspres    | The <b>express</b> train is faster because it does not make local stops. |
| F. Platforma      | Each train arrives at a different <b>platform</b> .                      |
| G. Darvoza        | Attention, passengers! Flight #725 is departing from <b>gate</b> A17.    |

### Exercise 8

1. D Do you want a window seat? Yes, please
2. B. When is the next bus to Bukhara? The next bus to Bukhara departs in 20 minutes.
3. A. Where can I buy a local train ticket? At the ticket window next to platform one.
4. E. At which platform is the express train from Termez arriving? That train will arrive at platform 16 in ten minutes.
5. C. How much is a first class ticket to Khiva. It is 64 dollars.

### Exercise 10

1. A Avtobusga chiqish uchun sizda chipta bo'lishi kerak.  
You must have a ticket to board the bus.
2. B Menga Moskvaga bir tomonli biznes klass chipta kerak.  
I need a business class one-way ticket to Moscow.
3. A. Keyingi tez poyezd o'n beshinchi (15<sup>th</sup>) platformadan o'n minutdan (10) keyin jo'naydi.  
The next express train will depart from platform 15 in 10 minutes.

## Exercise 12

1. D
2. E
3. F
4. C
5. A
6. B

## Exercise 13

- A. Where is the driver from? The U.S.
- B. Does the driver own the vehicle he is driving? No, it is a rental car.
- C. Where is the driver going? Samarkand
- D. Why is he going there? To visit family
- E. How long will he be there? Ten days
- F. What does the guard ask the driver to do at the end? Open the trunk
- G. Why? To do an inspection

Customs Official: Give me your passport and driver's license.  
Car Driver: OK  
CO: Are you a U.S. citizen?  
CD: Yes.  
CO: Do you have papers for this car?  
CD: Yes. It is a rental car.  
CO: Where are you going?  
CD: To Samarqand.  
CO: How long will you be there?  
CD: Ten days.  
CO: What will you do there?  
CD: I will visit my family.  
CO: Please open the trunk. We need to do an inspection.  
CD: OK.  
CO: OK, thank you. You may proceed.

## End of Lesson Exercise 1

- A. I need to buy a roundtrip ticket to Fargona, please.  
I leave on November 12 and return on December 3.  
I want a window seat.
- B. Is this an express train?
- C. What platform does the bus to Bukhara leave from?
- D. Train 34 is departing from platform three in five minutes.

## Lesson 15

### At School

### Maktabda

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary related to classroom activities
- Vocabulary related to being a student
- The education system in Uzbekistan.



In Uzbekistan mandatory education begins at age six and runs for 11 years. There is no division into elementary, junior high or high school. Children usually go to the same building for all eleven years and attend school as a same class, starting with first (preparatory) and graduating from eleventh. Education used to be of superb quality under the Soviets due to high standards and strict requirements and strong teachers. Unfortunately, since independence, education has suffered the usual fate of public sector branches financed on a residual funds principle causing widespread corruption.

In Uzbekistan today even grammar school students buy their grades and dreams of boys are limited to becoming a policeman or tax collector and girls of becoming a policeman or tax collector's wife.



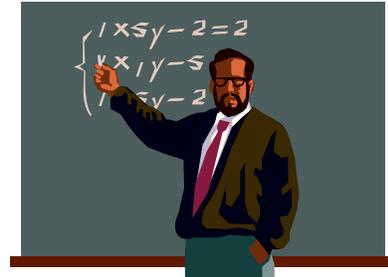
1. Familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the speaker and read the following text under each of the pictures.



**A student writes on the blackboard with chalk.**  
O'quvchi doskada bo'r bilan yozadi.



**A student raises her hand to ask a question.**  
O'quvchi savol so'rash uchun qo'lini ko'taradi.



**A teacher teaches students math.**  
O'qituvchi matematikadan dars beradi.



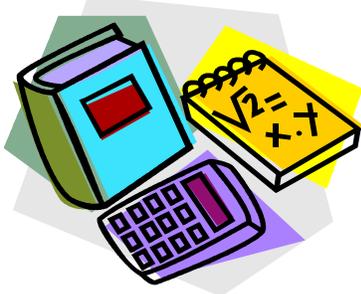
**Students study chemistry in middle school.**  
O'quvchilar kimyoni oltinchi sinfdan o'rganadilar.



**First grade students read a textbook.**  
Birinci sinf o'quvchilari darslik o'qiydilar



**Students will study art in this class.**  
Bu sinfda o'quvchilar san'atni o'rganadilar



**There is a book, a notebook, and a calculator.**  
Mana bu kitob, daftar va Kalkulyator.



**There is a desk and a chair in the classroom.**  
Sinxonada parta va stul/kursi bor.



**Students write with pens and pencils.**  
O'quvchilar ruchka va qalamlar bilan yozadilar.

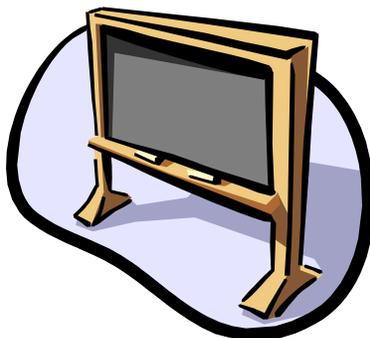
2. Work with a partner. Look around the classroom. Name the items you see.

Class	Sinf
Desk	Parta
Chair	Stul/kursi*
Blackboard	Sinf doskasi
Chalk	Bo'r
Pen	Ruchka
Pencil	Qalam
Notebook	Daftar
Computer	Kompyuter
Printer	Printer
Keyboard	Klaviatura
Monitor	Monitor
Teacher	O'qituvchi
Student	O'quvchi

2. Working with a partner, name the items you bring with you to class and the items found in your classroom.



Kompyuter



Doska



Globus



Kitob\*



Kalkulyator



Kasseta

\**kitob* – book.

Textbook – *darslik kitobi* or just *darslik*



4. Listen to the dialogue while you read along in the workbook. Underline the new vocabulary.

What is your name?

**Ismingiz nima?**

My name is Mahmud

**Ismim Mahmud**

How old are you?

**Yoshingiz nechada?**

I am 16 years old.

**Men o'n olti yoshdaman.**

What grade are you in?

**Siz nechanchi sinfdasiz?**

I am in 10<sup>th</sup> grade.

**Men o'ninchi sinfdaman**

What subjects do you study?

**Siz qanday mavzularni o'rganyapsiz?**

Math, biology, music, literature, and history.

**Men matematika, biologiya, adabiyot va tarixni o'rganyapman.**

What is your favorite subject?

**Sizga qaysi mavzu ko'proq yoqadi?**

My favorite subject is biology.

**Biologiya men uchun eng sevimli\* mavzu.**

Are you a good student?

**Siz yaxhi o'quvchimisiz?\***

Yes, I'm a good student.

**Ha, men yaxshi o'quvchiman.**

What will you do after school?

**Maktabni bitirgandan keyin nima qilasiz?**

I will go to college; I want to be a doctor.

**Men institutga kiraman. Men shifokor bo'lchiman.**

What do you like to do after school?

**Maktabdan keyin nima qilishni yaxshi ko'rasiz?**

After school I like to listen to music.

**Maktabdan keyin men musika eshitishni yaxshi ko'raman.**

\* *eng* means the most, *sevimli* – favorite, *men uchun* combination means for me

\*\* Uzbeks call an elementary, middle, or high school student *o'quvchi*. A college student is *talaba*.



5. Listen to and read along with some of the new words you should have underlined in Exercise 4.

grade	baho / sinf*
subject	mavzu
favorite	yoqqan/yaxshi ko'rilgan/sevimli
math	matematika
biology	biologiya
music	musiqqa
literature	adabiyot
history	tarix
college	institut
like	yoq-/yaxshi ko'r-
listen to	eshit-

\**baho* – grade as a mark, and *sinf* – as 6<sup>th</sup> grade, 7<sup>th</sup> grade etc. *sinf* is also a class

**In Uzbek preferences are expressed through the verb yoq- – to like – and compound verb yaxshi ko'r- with yaxshi being Uzbek for good, well, great, fabulous and ko'r- literally to see; to feel (see) good/well towards someone/something, look favorably, be disposed well at someone/something. Both yoq- and yaxshi ko'r- are used to speak about a disposition towards people and activities. When using yoq- don't forget to add ga – a directional ending – to the subject: Dilbarga kitob o'qish yoqadi. Dilbar+ga +object+activity verb +attitude verb. Sometimes the adjective sevimli (literally loved) is used with the adjective eng (most) in the usual Uzbek agglutination of words in the phrase – eng sevimli -most loved being direct substitutes for the English adjectives favorite, preferred, much loved, or desired. The following examples are typical agglutinative patterns of subject +object +activity verb+attitude verb.**

**Examples:**

Timur likes to study math.

Timur matematika o'rganishni yaxshi ko'radi.

Mahmud likes to listen to music after school.

Mahmudga maktabdan keyin musika eshitish yoqadi.

Dilbar likes to read in the evenings.

Dilbarga kechqurunlarda kitob o'qish yoqadi.

We like to speak Uzbek in our class.

Biz sinfimizda O'zbekcha gapirishni yaxshi ko'ramiz..

6. Working with a partner, come up with a dialogue similar to the one in Exercise 4. List your favorite subjects, say how good you think you are at each of them, tell what profession you are going to choose, and say what you like to do after school.



**7. Familiarize yourself with the new vocabulary. Listen to the speaker as you go over the dialogue.**

- A. Listen to the recording and take notes.  
Yozilgan ovozga quloq soling va qaydlaringizni yozing.
- B. Put your pencils down.  
Qalamlaringizni stolga qo'ying.
- C. Write your answer on the blackboard.  
Javobingizni doskaga yozing.
- D. Open your textbooks.  
Darsliklaringizni oching.
- E. Raise your hand if you have a question.  
Savolingiz bo'lsa qo'lingizni ko'taring
- F. Write down your homework, please.  
Iltimos, topshirig'ingizni\* daftarlaringga yozinglar.

\**Topshiriq* – homework, assignment. Note how the ending *iq* changes into *ig'* in conjunction with the ending *ingiz* – your homework – because of the plural form of address.

**8. Role-play a teacher. Have the students follow your directions. Use the expressions from Exercise 7.**



**9. Listen to the following questions and mark the answers that you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- 1. What do you do at school?
  - A. I read the textbooks at school.
  - B. I write letters and numbers in Uzbek.
  - C. I study many subjects.
- 2. What grade are you in?
  - A. I am in 5<sup>th</sup> grade.
  - B. I am in 6<sup>th</sup> grade.
  - C. I am in 8<sup>th</sup> grade.
- 3. What subjects are you studying?
  - A. Math, Uzbek, science, geography, and English.
  - B. Math, history, science, geography, and English.
  - C. Math, chemistry, science, geography, and English.
- 4. What is your favorite subject?
  - A. English
  - B. Geography
  - C. Science

5. Are you a good student?

- A. I'm very good at English, but I'm bad at math.
- B. I'm very good at geography, but I'm bad at math.
- C. I'm very good at chemistry, but I'm bad at math.

10. Working with a partner, come up with similar dialogues using expressions from Exercise 9.

11. Working in small groups, describe the following pictures. Come up with ages for the students and the teacher, their names, the subjects they study/teach, what they're doing right now, what they are wearing, if they seem to like their class and their teacher, etc.



12. Listen to and read the following text about the student's schedule, and then answer the questions below. The new word "busy" is introduced in the text. Try to guess this and other new words from the context.

Mening ismim Farog'at Qosimova. Men Toshkent Davlat Universitetining talabasiman. Men ingliz tilini o'rganyapman. Men tarjimon bo'lmoqchiman. Mening jadvalim to'la.\* Dushanba, chorshanba va juma kunlari men Universitetga soat sakkizda kelaman. O'qishdan keyin soat to'rtida men ishga boraman. Men restoranda ofitsiantka bo'lib ishlayman. Ishdan keyin, kechqurun soat o'nda uyga boraman. Seshanba va payshanba kunlari men o'qishga soat o'nda boraman. Darslarimdan keyin kunduzi soat o'n ikkida kutubxonaga boraman. Kutubxonada men uch soat kitoblarimni oqiyman. Topshiriqlarimni shanba, yakshanba kunlari va har kuni ertalab bajaraman.

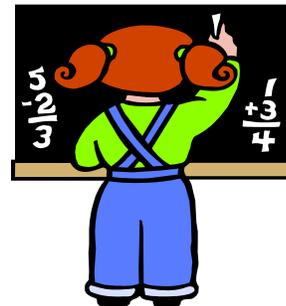
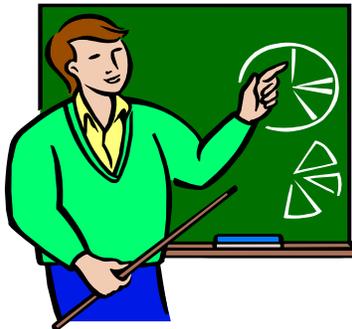
\*in this context *jadvalim to'la* stands for – I am busy (literally my schedule is full)  
There is another expression – *bandman* – for I am busy (literally - tied up) Example:  
Men ishlarim/darslarim bilan bandman. I am busy with my work/classes.

- A. What is the student's name?
- B. Where does she go to school?
- C. What does she study?
- D. What is her school schedule on Monday, Wednesday and Friday?
- E. What is her schedule on Tuesday and Thursday?
- F. What job does she have and when does she work?
- G. When does the student do homework?
- H. What does the student want to do after finishing school?



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

1. Go over the text from Exercise 12 again. Tell the class about your schedule. Use the questions after the text as an outline for your story.
2. Look at the pictures and tell a story about what you see. Include the grade the students are in, the subjects they are studying, what the teacher is doing, what the students and teachers are wearing, etc.



**3. Read and compare the following texts and find the errors in the English translations. Make corrections so that the translation is accurate. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. A. Mening ismim Sevara Bakirova. Men Qo'qondanman, lekin xozir Toshkentda yashayman. Men oltinchi sinfda o'qiyman.  
Mening do'stlarim ko'p. Men Ingliz tili, o'qish va basketbolni yaxshi ko'raman .
- B. My name is Sevara Bakirova. I'm from Kokand, but now I live in Tashkent. I'm in fifth grade.  
I have many friends. I like music, reading, and basketball.
2. A. Mening ismim Bahrom Matchonov. Men O'rganchdanman, lekin hozir G'azalkentda yashayman. Men matematika va fanni yaxshi ko'raman.
- B. My name is Bahrom Matchonov. I'm from Andijon, but I live in Bukhara.  
I like math and geography.
3. A. Mening ismim Rustam Ahmedov. Men sakkizinchi (8<sup>th</sup>) Aprel, bir ming to'qqiz yuz sakson to'qqizinchi (1989<sup>th</sup>) yilda tug'ilganman. Men sakkizinchi sinfdaman.  
Men musiqa, san'at va fotografiya darslarini yaxshi ko'raman. Men rassom, shifokor yoki fotograf bo'lishni xoxlayman.
- B. My name is Rustam Ahmedov. I was born on August 4, 1989. I'm in 9<sup>th</sup> grade.  
I like music class and photography. I want to be a doctor, or a photographer

## Vocabulary List

art	san'at
basketball	basketbol
biology	biologiya
blackboard	doska
busy	band
chair	stul/kursi
chalk	bo'r
chemistry	kimyo
class	dars
college/university	institut
computer	kompyuter
desk	parta/stol
elementary school	maktab
english	ingliz tili
grade	sinf / baho
high school	maktab
history	tarix
homework	topshiriq
literature	adabiyot
math	matematika
middle school	maktab
music	musiqqa
notebook	daftar
pen	ruchka
pencil	qalam
photography	fotografiya
reading	o'qish
student	o'quvchi/talaba
subject(s)	mavzu(lar)
tape recorder	magnitofon
teacher	o'qituvchi
to like	yoq-/yaxshi ko'r-
to read	o'qi-
to study	o'rgan-
to write	yoz-
listen to the recording and take notes.	yozilgan ovozga quloq soling va qaydlaringizni yozing
put your pencils down.	qalamlaringizni stolga qo'ying.
write your answer on the blackboard.	javobingizni doskaga yozing.
open your textbooks.	darsliklaringizni oching.
raise your hand!	qo'lingizni ko'taring
write down your homework, please	iltimos, topshirig'ingizni daftaringizga yozing.

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 9

1. What do you do at school?  
C. I study many subjects. - Men ko'p fanlarni o'rganaman.
2. What grade are you in?  
B. I am in 6<sup>th</sup> grade. - Men oltinchi (6<sup>th</sup>) sinfdaman.
3. What subjects are you studying?  
A. Math, Uzbek, science, geography, and English. - Matematika, o'zbek tili, fan, geografiya va Ingliz tilini
4. What is your favorite subject?  
B. Geography - Geografiya
5. Are you a good student?  
C. I'm very good at chemistry, but I'm bad at math. - Men kimyoda juda yaxshiman, lekin matematikada yaxshi emasman.

### Exercise 12

- A. What is the student's name?  
Her name is Farog'at Kasimova
- B. Where does she go to school?  
She goes to Tashkent State University
- C. What does she study?  
She studies English.
- D. What is her school schedule on Monday, Wednesday and Friday?  
She goes to school from 8:00am until 4:00pm.
- E. What is her schedule on Tuesday and Thursday?  
She goes to class at 10am then at 12:00 she goes to the library to study for three hours.
- F. What job does she have and when does she work?  
She works as a waitress in a restaurant from 4:00 to 10:00pm on Monday, Wednesday and Friday.
- G. When does the student do homework?  
She does homework on weekends and in the mornings.
- H. What does the student want to do after finishing school?  
She wants to be an interpreter.

My name is Farog'at Kasimova. I am a student at Tashkent State University. I study English. I want to be an interpreter. I have a busy schedule. On Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I go to school at 8:00. After school, at 4:00pm, I go to work. I work at a restaurant as a waitress. After work, at 10 pm, I go home. On Tuesday and Thursday, I go to class at 10am. After school, at 12:00, I go to the library. I study at the library for three hours in the afternoon. I do my homework on the weekends and in the mornings.

### End of Lesson Exercise 3

Your English translation should be as follows. The bolded terms are the corrected errors.

1. My name is Sevara Bakirova. I'm from Kokand, but now I live in Tashkent. I'm in **sixth** grade.

I have many friends. I like **English language**, reading, and basketball.

2. My name is Bahrom Matchonov. I'm from **Urganch**, but I live in **Gazalkent**. I like math and **science**.

3. A. My name is Rustam Ahmedov. I was born on **April 8**, 1989. I'm in **8<sup>th</sup>** grade.

I like music class, **art**, and photography. I want to be an **artist**, doctor or a photographer.

## Lesson 16

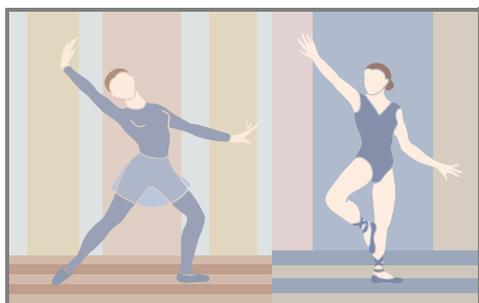
### Recreation and Leisure

### Sport va Istirohat

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary related to recreational and leisure activities
- Ways to discuss hobbies in Uzbek.

**1. Read the sentences with the new vocabulary and try to guess the meaning of any unknown words.**



Bu ayol va erkak kishi raqsga tushyaptilar. Ular raqsga tushishni yaxshi ko'radilar.



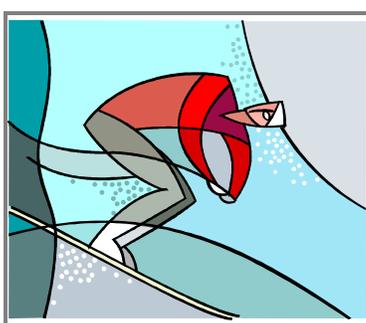
Bu ayol musiqachi. U kontsertda pianino chaladi.



Bu odam surat oladi. U fotograf.



Bu Andrei. U futbolni yaxshi ko'radi.



Bu odam tog'da chang'i uchadi. U chang'i uchishni yaxshi ko'radi.



Mening do'stim Sandy har kuni kunduzi darsdan keyin yuguradi.



Mening akam/ukam kegli o'yinni yaxshi ko'radi.



Havo yaxshi bo'lsa bolalar har kuni cho'miladi.



Bu yigit tennis o'ynaydi.



Mening singlim rasm solishni yaxshi ko'radi.



Soldatlar palatkada karta o'ynaydilar. Ular karta o'ynashni yaxshi ko'radilar.



Bu er-xotin har kuni kechqurun sayr qilishni yaxshi ko'radilar.



Ikkita soldat shahmat o'ynaydirl. Ular shahmatni yaxshi ko'radilar.



Bu odam gitara chaladi va ashula aytadi.



**2. Now listen to the speaker. Check to see if you guessed correctly. Repeat the new words as many times as you need to feel comfortable with the pronunciation.**

Play	O'yna-
Cards	Karta
To ski	Chang'i uch-
To dance	Raqsga tush-
Tennis	Tennis
Tennis Court	Tennis korti
Play piano	Pianino chal-
Musician	Musiqachi
To take photos	Surat ol-
Photographer	Fotograf
To play guitar	Gitara chal-
To sing	Ashula ayt-
Song(s)	Qo'shiq(lar)/Ashula(lar)
Chess	Shahmat
To walk	Sayr qil-
To swim	Cho'mil-
Swimming pool	Basseyn
To run	Yugur-
Bowling Alley	Kegelban
To bowl	Kegli o'yna-
Soccer	Futbol
To like	Yaxshi ko'r-*
To paint	Rasm sol-

\* Literally: To see (**ko'r**-) well (**yaxshi**). Similar to **yoqtir**-.



**3. Listen to the dialogues as you read them.**

1. What will they do after school?

Ular maktabdan keyin nima qiladilar?

A. They will swim after school.

Ular maktabdan keyin cho'miladilar

B. They will dance after school.

Ular maktabdan keyin raqsga tushadilar.

C. They will sing after school.

Ular maktabdan keyin ashula aytadilar.

2. What sports does he play?

**U qanday sport o'ynaydi?**

A. He plays soccer and basketball.

**A. U futbol va basketbol o'ynaydi.**

B. He plays soccer and volleyball.

U volleybol va futbol o'ynaydi.

C. He plays soccer and tennis.

U futbol va tennis o'ynaydi.

3. What does she do today?

**Bugun u nima qiladi?**

A. She sings songs.

U ashula aytadi.

B. She paints pictures.

U rasm soladi.

C. She takes pictures.

U surat oladi.

4. Do you play chess?

Siz shahmat o'ynaysizmi?

Do you play guitar?

Siz gitara chalasizmi?

Do you play the piano?

**Siz pianino chalasizmi?**

A. Yes, I play chess.

Ha, men shahmat o'ynayman.

B. No, I play the piano.

Yo'q, men pianino chalaman.

C. Yes, I play the piano.

Ha, men pianino chalaman.

5. What do you like to do?

**Siz nima qilishni yaxshi ko'rasiz?**

A. I like to run and take pictures.

Men yugurish va surat olishni yaxshi ko'raman.

B. I like to read and swim.

Men o'qish va cho'milishni yaxshi ko'raman.

C. I like to walk and play soccer

Men sayr qilish va futbolni yaxshi ko'raman.

**4. Work with a partner. Take turns reading the dialogues in Exercise 3.**

**5. Work with a partner or in a small group. Make up exchanges using the models and phrases from Exercise 3.**

**6. Reconstruct the questions in Uzbek. Check your work with the answer key.**

A. - .....

- Yes, I play chess.

**- Ha, men shahmat o'ynayman.**

B. - .....

- Yes, I play the piano.

**Ha, men pianino chalaman.**

C. -.....?

- My hobbies are running and taking photos.

**Men yugurish va surat olishni yaxshi ko'raman.**

D. - .....

- He plays soccer and basketball.

**U futbol va basketbol o'ynaydi.**

E. - .....

- My hobbies are reading and swimming.

**Mening o'qish va cho'milishni yaxshi ko'raman.**

F. - .....

- She likes to walk and play guitar.

**U sayr qilish va gitara chalishni yaxshi ko'radi.**

**7. Read and translate the following text, noting the new vocabulary. Do you understand all the words in bold? Check the grammar note for some explanations. Check the answer key for an English translation.**

In Uzbek "from... to..." structure is formed by adding the ending +**dan** to the origin word and the ending +**ga** to the destination word. Men Toshkent**dan** soat o'nda uchaman va Termizga kunduzi soat birda kelaman - I am flying from Tashkent at 10 and will arrive to Termez at 1PM. This rule applies to time telling too: Men soat sakkiz**dan** besh**gacha** ishda bo'laman – I will be at work from 8 to 5. The compound ending **ga+cha** signifies until, till. The ending +**gacha** is used with geographical names and means ...*until we reach*. We'll drive/walk until we reach our destination. Can you take me to Pakhtakor Stadium? – Meni Paxtakor**gacha** olib borasizmi? Destination + **gacha** is a typical question when hiring a cab.

*Too* and *also* can both be expressed through the word **ham** following the pronoun or name.

I play soccer too – Men **ham** futbol o'ynayman. Nigora also plays piano - Nigora **ham** pianino chaladi.

Mening ismim Bekzod Muhammadkarimov. Men Samarqand shahri, Samarqand viloyatidanman. Men Toshkent shahri, Toshkent viloyatida Xalqaro Iqtisod va Diplomatiya Universitetining talabasiman.

Men darslarim bilan juda bandman. Men informatikani o'rganyapman va universitetimizning futbol **komandasining** bir qatnashchisiman. Men har kuni soat sakkiz yarimdan kunduzi uchgacha o'qishdaman. Maktabdan keyin har kuni kunduzi soat to'rt dan oltigacha mening **futbol trenirovkam** bor. Men futbolni yaxshi ko'raman. Men va mening do'stlarim **dam olish kunlari ham** futbol o'ynaymiz. Men **cho'milishni** va **gitara chalishni ham** yaxshi ko'raman.. Men gitara chalishni uncha yaxshi bilmayman. Bu yakshanba kuni men do'stlarim bilan Chirchiq shahri, Toshkent viloyatida stadionda bo'ladigan kontsertga boraman. Bizning eng yaxshi ko'rgan ashulachimiz qo'shiq aytadi. Kontsertdan keyin biz restoranda ovqatlanamiz.

**8. Now read the text as many times as you want and mark the following statements as either True or False. Check your work with the answer key.**

- A. \_\_\_\_\_ Bekzod Muhammadkarimov is from Samarkand, Samarkand Province.
- B. \_\_\_\_\_ He is a high school student in Tashkent, Tashkent Province.
- C. \_\_\_\_\_ Bekzod studies chemistry.
- D. \_\_\_\_\_ Bekzod plays on the university soccer team.
- E. \_\_\_\_\_ He had class every day from 8:30 to 3:00.
- F. \_\_\_\_\_ Bekzod likes to swim and play the piano.
- H. \_\_\_\_\_ After the concert Bekzod will go home to do his homework.

9. Working with a partner or in a small group, come up with the description of a busy schedule. Use the statements from Exercise 8 as an outline for your story. The pictures given below can help you choose the activities to describe.



There are not very many recreational and leisure activities practiced by Uzbek people. Traditional Uzbek sports that are somewhat on the rise are kurash – wrestling and uloq – horseback races for a goat’s carcass. Quality Western recreation is available but limited to the hotels and clubs in the capital and major cities. Well maintained gyms, swimming pools, bowling alleys and golf courses are rare and almost exclusively used by foreigners and local elite. Uzbeks are not big on sports as participants. Women participation was always discouraged and since independence has declined significantly. Oddly enough, independent Uzbekistan has a female Golden Olympic Medalist in freestyle and maintains a decent female gymnastics team due to direct involvement of the president’s daughter as a sponsor. Soccer is very big and is a national pastime but unfortunately plagued by ownership issues, lack of funds and corruption. Alcohol and tobacco are sold around the clock and there is no zoning so the discos and nightclubs are sometimes crammed into apartment buildings.



10. Listen to the vocabulary as you look at the pictures. Try to match the target language words with the pictures. Check your answers with the answer key.



1



2



3



4



5



6

Basseyn  
Futbol stadioni  
Tennis korti  
Kegelban  
Sportzal  
Stadion

11. Read the statements below and think about their meanings. Cross out the words or phrases that do not make sense, and replace them with an appropriate word from the list below. Check your work with the answer key.

Gymnasium

**Sportzal**

bowling alley

**Kegelban**

swimming pool

**Basseyn**

stadium

**Stadion**

tennis courts

**Tennis korti**

playing field

**Maydon**

Talabalar tennis kortda volleybol o'ynaydilar.

Bolalar stadionda cho'miladilar.

Qizlar tog'da kegli o'ynaydilar.

Do'stlarim kegelbanga yugurish uchun boradilar.

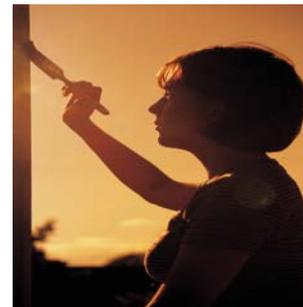
O'g'il bolalar basseynnda futbol o'ynaydilar.



**12. Listen to the statements and mark the ones that you hear.**

1.     A. She will swim after school.  
       B. She will dance after school.  
       C. She will sing after school.
  
2.     A. He likes to play soccer and basketball.  
       B. He likes to play soccer and volleyball.  
       C. He likes to play soccer and tennis.
  
3.     A. She doesn't sing, but she plays piano.  
       B. She doesn't paint pictures, but she takes photographs.  
       C. She doesn't dance, but she sings.
  
4.     A. Do you play chess?                     No, I play checkers.  
       B. Do you play guitar?                 No, I play piano.  
       C. Do you play piano?                 Yes, I play piano.
  
5.     A. What are your hobbies?               I like to run and sing.  
       B. What are your hobbies?             I like to read and dance.  
       C. What are your hobbies?             I like to walk and play cards.

**13. Working with a partner, look at the pictures and make up dialogues about someone's hobbies. Use the models and phrases from Exercise 12.**





## End-of-Lesson Tasks.

### 1. Answer the following questions in Uzbek.

- A. What is your favorite sport or recreational activity?
- B. How often do you participate in your activity?
- C. What is your favorite thing to do?
- D. What did you do last weekend?
- E. What will you do next weekend?

### 2. Work with a partner or in a small group. In Uzbek describe the pictures below, using the vocabulary you have learned in this lesson.



## Vocabulary List

bowling alley	kegelban
bowling	kegli o'yini
cards	karta
chess	shahmat
computer science	informatika
gymnasium	sportzal
paint pictures	rasm sol-
playing field	maydon
to bowl	kegli o'yna-
to dance	raqsga tush-
to play chess, cards	shahmat, karta o'yna-
to play soccer, volleyball;	futbol, volleybol o'yna-
to play a piano, a guitar	pianino, gitara chal-
to run	yugur-
to sing	ashula / qo'shiq ayt-
to ski	chang'i uch-
to swim	cho'mil-
to take pictures	surat ol-
soccer field	futbol stadioni
songs	ashulalar/qo'shiqlar
stadium	stadion
swimming pool	basseyn
tennis	tennis
tennis court	tennis korti

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 6

- |                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A. Do you play chess?        | Siz shazmat o'ynaysizmi?           |
| B. Do you play the piano?    | Siz pianino chalasizmi?            |
| C. What are your hobbies?    | Siz nima qilishni yaxshi ko'rasiz? |
| D. What sports does he play? | U qanday sport o'ynaydi?           |
| E. What are your hobbies?    | Siz nima qilishni yaxshi ko'rasiz? |
| F. What does she like to do? | U nima qilishni yaxshi ko'radi?    |

### Exercise 7

My name is Bekzod Muhammadkarimov. I am Samarqand, Samarqand provincedan. I go to college at of Xalqaro Iqtisod and Diplomatiya Universityda in Tashkent, Tashkent provinceda. I am very busy with my classes. I study computer science, and I play on the university soccer **komanda**. I have class every day 8:30**dan** 3:00**gacha** in the afternoon. After school I have soccer **trenirovkam** every day 4:00 **dan** 6:00**gacha**. I like to play soccer. My friends and I play on the weekends **ham**. I **ham** like to swim and to play the guitar. I'm not very good at the guitar. This weekend my friends and I will go to a concert at the stadium in Chirchiq shahri, Toshkent. Our favorite singer will sing. After the concert we will go to a restaurant and have dinner.

### Exercise 8

- A. T Bekzod Muhammadkarimov is from Samarkand, Samarkand Province.
- B. F He is a high school student at International University of Economics and Diplomacy in Tashkent, Tashkent Province.
- C. F Bekzod studies chemistry.
- D. T Bekzod plays on the university soccer team.
- E. T He had class every day from 8:30 to 3:00.
- F. F Bekzod likes to swim and play the piano.
- H. F After the concert Bekzod will go home to do his homework.

### Exercise 10

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Bowling Alley | Kegelban        |
| 2. Gymnasium     | Sportzal        |
| 3. Soccer field  | Futbol stadioni |
| 4. Stadium       | Stadion         |
| 5. Swimming pool | Basseyn         |
| 6. Tennis court  | Tennis korti    |

### Exercise 11

- A. Talabalar sportzalda volleybol o'ynadilar.
- A. The students play volleyball in the gymnasium.
- B. Bolalar basseynnda cho'miladilar.
- B. The children swim in the swimming pool.
- C. Qizlar kegelbanda kegli o'ynadilar.
- C. The girls go bowling in the bowling alley.
- D. Mening do'stlarim yugurish uchun stadionga boradilar.
- D. My friends go for a run in the stadium.
- E. Boys play soccer on the playing field.
- E. O'g'il bolalar futbol stadionida futbol o'ynadilar.

### Exercise 12

1. C Maktabdan keyin u ashula aytadi.
2. A U futbol va basketbol o'ynashni yaxshi ko'radi.
3. B U rasm solmaydi, lekin surat oladi.
4. B Siz gitara chalasizmi? Yo'q, men pianino chalaman
5. B Siz nima yaxshi ko'rasiz? Men o'qishni va raqs qilishni yaxshi ko'raman.

## Lesson 17

### Health and the Human Body

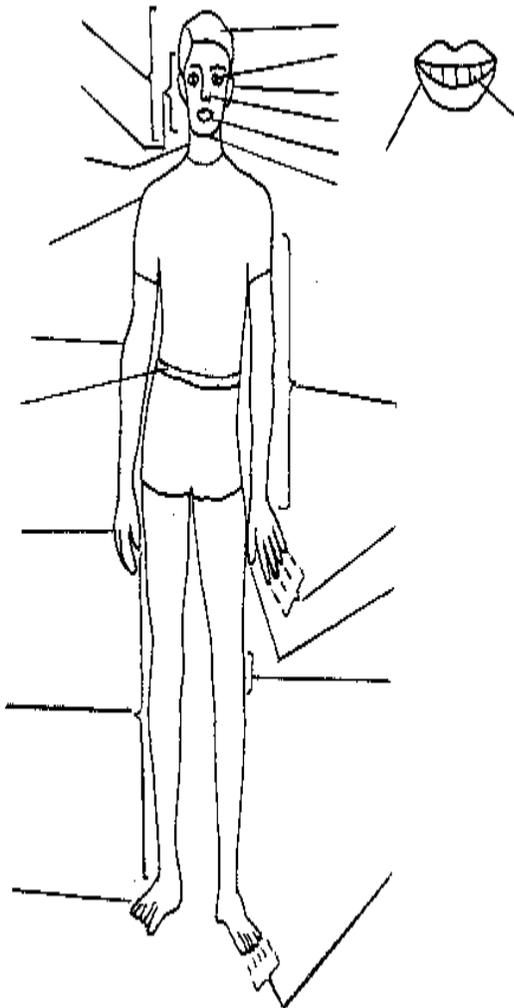
### Badan va Sog'-Salomatlik

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary related to the human body
- Asking questions about a person's state of health
- Answering questions about health conditions
- Typical exchanges at the doctor's office.



**1. Listen as the speaker recites the vocabulary. Then study the diagram and match the Uzbek terms for each body part with the diagram.**



Abdomen	Qorin
Arm	Qo'l
Back	Orqa
Chest	Ko'krak
Chin	Iyak
Ear	Quloq
Elbow	Tirsak
Eye	Ko'z
Face	Yuz
Finger(s)	Barmoq(lar)
Foot	Oyoq
Genital(s)	Jinsiy a'zo(lar)
Groin	Chot
Hair	Soch
Hand	Panja
Head	Bosh
Heart	Yurak
Hip	Son
Knee	Tizza
Leg	Oyoq
Mouth	Og'iz
Neck	Bo'yin
Nose	Burun
Pelvis	Tos suyagi
Shoulder	Yelka
Stomach	Oshqozon
Toes	Oyoq barmoqlari
Tooth/Teeth	Tish/tishlar
Waist	Bel

2. In Uzbek, name the body parts that come in pairs. Check your work with the answer key.

3. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate body part in Uzbek. Check your answers with the answer key.

**Ko'zlar    Quloqlaq    Boldirlar    Oyoqlar    Bosh    Qo'l    Bo'yin    Og'iz**

- A. I use my \_\_\_\_\_ to read a book.
- B. I listen to music with my \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Walking is good for my \_\_\_\_\_.
- D. I wear shoes and socks on my \_\_\_\_\_.
- E. In the winter, I wear a hat on my \_\_\_\_\_, gloves on my \_\_\_\_\_, and a scarf around my \_\_\_\_\_.
- F. I eat and drink with my \_\_\_\_\_.

Uzbek has verbs for “to feel”: sez- and his et- but when describing health conditions people simply state – 1. Men kasalman or 2. Men kasal bo'ldim – being exact matches to English – 1. I am sick and 2. I got sick. The usual questions – qalaysiz? qandaysiz? ahvolingiz qanday? - that are part of a routine greeting at every encounter are asked when one inquires about another person's health. General queries about health usually do not have “feel” and “symptoms” in them. The word “bezovta” in a health related query means “trouble” “difficulty” that a patient experiences. Specific queries directed by a professional at the patient have names of organs and systems concerned.

How do you feel?

**Qandaysiz?**

I feel sick.

**Men kasalman / Mening mazam yo'q**

I feel weak.

**Mening quvvatim\* yo'q**

I feel bad.

**Men yomon his qilyapman.**

I have a sore throat.

**Mening tomog'im og'riyapti.**

I have a fever.

**Mening isitmam bor.**

I have a headache.

**Mening boshim og'riyapti.**

My left ankle hurts.

What symptoms do you have?

**Sizni nima bezovta qilyapti?**

Where does it hurt?  
**Qayeringiz\*\* og'riyapti?**

**Mening chap to'pig'im og'riyapti.**  
My back hurts.  
**Mening orqam og'riyapti.**  
My stomach hurts.  
**Mening qornim og'riyapti.**

\**quvvat* – energy. Here, *Mening quvvatim yo'q*, literally means *I have no energy*.

\*\* Do you know why the usual +*da*, +*ga*, +*dan* is missing? Because the subject of the sentence is *qayeringiz*. It literally means: “Where of you is hurting?”



**4. Listen to the following questions and answers, and read along in the workbook.**

A. How do you feel?  
Qandaysiz?

I feel sick.  
Mening mazam yo'q

B. What is the matter with her?  
Unga nima bo'ldi?

Her leg hurts.  
Uning oyog'i og'riyapti.

C. How do you feel?  
Qandaysiz?

My head hurts.  
Mening boshim og'riyapti.

D. Are you in pain?  
Bir joyingiz og'riyaptimi?

Yes, my arm is broken.  
Ha, mening qo'lim singan.

E. Where does it hurt?  
Qayeringiz og'riyapti?

My stomach hurts.  
Mening qornim og'riyapti

F. Are you sick?  
Siz kasalmisiz?

No, I'm pregnant.  
Yo'q men homiladorman\*.

G. Are you OK?  
Ahvolingiz\*\* yaxshimi?

I don't feel good. I feel nauseous and have a stomachache.  
Mening mazam yo'q. Mening ko'nglim aynayapti va qornim og'riyapti.

H. Are you taking any medication?  
Siz dori ichyapsizmi?

Yes, over-the-counter ones.  
Ha, retseptsiz\*\*\* beriladigan dori ichyapman.

\* *homilador* – pregnant

\*\* *ahvol* – condition; *ahvol+ingiz* – your condition. So, literally, *Ahvolingiz yaxshimi?* means: Are you in good condition, or Are you OK?

\*\*\* *retsept* – prescription; *retsept+siz* – without prescription. Note, the ending *siz* here stands for *without*. So, in this case, *Ha, retseptsiz beriladigan dori ichyapman* literally translates into *Yes, I am taking medication which is sold without prescription*.

5. Working with a partner, role-play the dialogues from Exercise 4

6. Match each picture with the corresponding statement. Check your work with the answer key.



A



B



C

1. Bu yosh ayol kasal emas. U homiladordir.
2. Bu kichkina qizning isitmasi bor, tomog'i va badani og'riyapti, u aksiryapti va yo'talyapti. U gripp bilan kasal.
3. Bu kichkina bolaning ko'ngli aynayapti va qorni og'riyapti.

7. Working with a partner, role-play the doctor and patient. Use the questions from Exercise 5 as a model. Use the phrases from Exercise 6 to describe your symptoms.



8. Listen to and read the list of the typical symptoms for each ailment

Flu	Gripp
Fever	Isitma
Congestion	Tumov
Sore throat	Shamollagan tomoq
Body aches	Badan og'rig'i
Sneezing	Aksirish
Coughing	Yo'talish
Head cold	Shamollagan bosh
Constipation	Ich qotish
Severe Pain	Qattiq og'riq
Broken Bone	Singan suyak
Swelling	Shish
Bruise	Qontalash
Bleeding	Qonash
Sprain	Uzilish
Pain	Og'riq

Pregnant	Homilador
Flu	Gripp
Cold	Shamollash*
Medication	Dori
Nausea	Ko'ngil aynashi
Stomach	Oshqozon
Prescription	Retsept
Condition	Ahvol
Doctor	Doktor / Shifokor** / Vrach

\*This is generally used as a verb, *shamolla-*. *Shamolladim, shamolladingiz, shamollaysiz*, etc.

\*\**Shifokor* is an official term. *Doktor* and *vrach* are for everyday usage.

**9. Look at the chart of symptoms in Exercise 8. Work with a partner or in a small group. Develop the questions the doctor can ask about one's symptoms to be able to diagnose the problem. Use the following model to create a dialogue.**

**Model:** - Do you have fever?  
 - No, I don't.  
 - Do you have a cough and body aches?  
 - No, doctor.  
 - That's very good. You don't have flu. It's a cold.  
 - Thank you, doctor.  
 - You are welcome.

**Conversion chart (1 ft = 30 cm, 1 inch = 2.5 cm, 100 cm = 1 meter, 1 lb = 0.454 kg).**

- How tall is he, and how much does he weigh?

**Uning bo'yi va og'irligi qanaqa\*?**

- He is 174 centimeters tall and weighs 72 kilos.

**Uning bo'yi bir yuz yetmish to'rt santimetr va og'irligi yetmish ikki kilogramm.**

- How tall are you? How much do you weigh?

**Sizing bo'yingiz qanaqa? Og'irligingiz qancha\*\*?**

- I am 165 centimeters tall and weigh 56 kilos.

**Mening bo'yim bir yuz oltmish besh santimetr va og'irligim ellik olti kilogramm**

\* *qanaqa* - how

\*\**qancha* – how much, how many

**10. Working with a partner, take turns asking each other about your height and weight. Do not forget to use the units of measure appropriate for Uzbekistan.**



**11. Listen to the speaker while you read the statements below. Translate each exchange. You can check the English translation in the answer key.**

- A. – Qandaysiz?  
Mening mazam yo'q. Mening ko'nglim aynayapti.
- B. – Qandaysiz?  
Men yaxshiman, lekin ko'nglim ozgina\* aynayapti.
- C. – Ahvolingiz qanday?  
Mening mazam yo'q, lekin ko'nglim aynamayapti.
- D. -- Menimcha mening oyog'im sindi, iltimos tez yordamni chaqirib bering!
- E. -- Menimcha u oyog'ini sindirdi, iltimos tez yordamni chaqirib bering!
- F. -- U oyog'ini sindirdimi? Shunday, menimcha. Iltimos tez yordamni chaqirib bering.  
\*ozgina – a little bit, a little



**12. What do you hear? Listen to the speaker and mark the statement that you hear. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. A. Where does it hurt? My stomach hurts.  
B. Where does it hurt? My back hurts.  
C. Where does it hurt? My neck hurts.
2. A. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a headache.  
B. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a stomachache.  
C. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and my body aches.
3. A. How do you feel? I don't feel well. I'm nauseous.  
B. How do you feel? I feel fine, but I'm a little nauseous.  
C. How do you feel? I don't feel well, but I'm not nauseous.
4. A. I think I broke my leg. Please call an ambulance!  
B. I think he broke his leg. Please call an ambulance!  
C. Did he break his leg? I think so, please call an ambulance!



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

**1. Ask and answer the following questions in Uzbek. Check the answer key for a translation of the questions.**

- A. When you have the flu, what are your symptoms?
- B. Are you taking any medications?
- C. Have you ever broken a bone? If yes, which one(s)?
- D. What is your height and weight?
- E. How often do you see a doctor? Every month? Every year? Every 3 years?

**2. Tell the class what you do in order to keep a healthy weight? Do you exercise? What types of exercise do you like? How often and for how long do you exercise? Do you have a special diet? What kind? What do you eat and not eat? Give an example of your menu. What do you order when you eat out? How does it affect your diet the next day?**

**3. Work with a partner or in a small group. Describe the picture below.**



## Vocabulary List

abnormal	g'ayritabiiy
allergies	allergiya
ambulance	tez yordam
arm	qo'l
wrist	bilak
chest	ko'krak
chin	iyak
are you in pain?	qayeringiz og'riyapti?
are you taking any medication?	siz dori ichaypsizmi?
body aches	badan og'rig'i
broken bone	singan suyak
bruise	qontalash
call an ambulance!	tez yordamni chaqiring!
congestion	tumov
coughing	yo'tal
ear	quloq
elbow	tirsak
eye	ko'z
finger	barmoq
foot	oyoq
feel	his qil-
fever	isitma
flu/influenza	gripp
hand	qo'l
head	bosh
hip	son
knee	tizza
help!	yordam bering!
how do you feel?	ahvolingiz qanday?
to hurt	og'ri-
leg	oyoq
mouth	og'iz
nose	burun
neck	bo'yin
medicine	tibbiyot
nausea	ko'ngil aynash
pain	og'riq
pregnant	homilador
shoulder	yelka
toes	oyoq barmoqlari
waist	bel
sick	kasal
sneezing	aksirish

sore throat  
stomach  
stomach cramps  
sprain  
swelling  
what is the matter?  
where does it hurt?

shamollagan tomoq  
oshqozon  
qorin og'rig'i  
uzilish  
shish  
tinchlikmi?/nima bo'ldi?  
qayeringiz og'riyapti?

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 2

ears	quloqlar
elbows	tirsaklar
eyes	ko'zlar
feet	oyoqlar
hands	qo'llar
knees	tizzalar
shoulders	yelkalar
arms	qo'llar
legs	boldirlar / oyoqlar
hips	sonlar

### Exercise 3

a. eyes	ko'zlar
b. ears	quloqlar
c. legs	oyoqlar
d. feet	oyoqlar
e. head, hands, neck	bosh, qo'llar, bo'yin
f. mouth	og'iz

### Exercise 6

- A. 2 The little girl has a fever, a sore throat, and body aches, and she is sneezing and coughing.  
She has the flu.
- B. 1 The young woman is not sick. She is pregnant.
- C. 3 The little boy is nauseous and has a stomachache.

### Exercise 11

- A. – How do you feel? - I don't feel well. I'm nauseous.
- B. - How do you feel? - I feel fine, but I'm a little nauseous.
- C. – How do you feel? -I don't feel well, but I'm not nauseous.
- D. I think I broke my leg. Please call an ambulance!
- E. I think he broke his leg. Please call an ambulance!
- F. Did he break his leg? I think so. Please call an ambulance!

## Exercise 12

1. B. Where does it hurt? My back hurts.  
Qayeringiz og'riyapti? Mening orqam og'riyapti.
2. A. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a headache.  
Sizni nima bezovta qilyapti? Mening isitmam bor va boshim og'riyapti.
3. A. How do you feel? I don't feel well. I'm nauseous.  
Ahvolingiz qanday? Ahvolim yomon. Mening ko'nglim aynayapti.
4. C. Did he break his leg? I think so, please call an ambulance!  
U oyog'ini sindirdimi? Shunday, menimcha. Iltimos tez yordamni chaqirib bering.

## End of Lesson Exercise 1

- A. Gripp bilan kasal bo'lganingizda sizni nima bezovta qiladi?
- B. Siz dori ichayapsizmi?
- C. Siz suyagingizni hech sindirganmisiz? Agar sindirgan bo'lsangiz, qaysi birini?
- D. Sizning bo'yingiz va og'irligingiz qanaqa?
- E. Siz qachon doktorga borasiz? Har bir oymi? Har bir yilmi? Har uch yilmi?

## **Lesson 18**

### **Political and International Events**

### **Siyosiy va Xalqaro Voqealar**

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary associated with politics and international issues.
- How they are reported in Uzbekistani news.
- How to read and understand political events written in Uzbek newspapers.

Uzbekistan is a country of 26,000,000 which declared independence from the Soviet Union in September 1991. Its only ruling party, the Communist Party, changed its name to the People's Democratic Party and announced a transition to a parliamentary system.

However, the country is actually a dictatorship with the president, Islam Karimov, executing absolute personal control within the executive branch and usurping the prerogatives of the legislative and judicial branches through the National Security Service (NSS – the renamed KGB with 125,000 officers), the Ministry of Interior (MOI with 1,700,000 uniformed policemen) and the military (35,000 soldiers and officers). After fifteen years of independence people saw nothing but a consolidation of power by a president who has continued to rule since he was the First Secretary of the Communist Party of Uzbekistan, running in the presidential elections unopposed and routinely staging referendums on the extension of his term in office and amending the constitution.

The only four political parties in the country were all created by the president's directive and are tightly controlled by NSS with all local functionaries' appointments cleared by the president himself. The government does not allow private ownership of land and other means of production. As a result the country is in dire straights with 4,000,000 people working abroad in Russia and elsewhere. Unemployment is 62% and up to 80% in rural areas of certain provinces. The regime indiscriminately suppresses all kinds of activism and religious freedom, employing bogus criminal cases against protesters as a rule and using torture, which has led to the emergence of the radical Islamic Movement of Uzbekistan - IMU and Hizb ut-Tahrir (Arabic for "the Party of Scripture") HUT. The IMU is considered eliminated as a fighting force and Hizb ut-Tahrir is a self-proclaimed nonviolent organization headquartered in London, after being banned in Uzbekistan. Both are on the US terrorist organizations list.



### 1. Familiarize yourself with the political terms.

Government	Hukumat
Prime minister	Bosh ministr
President	Prezident
Leader	Yurtboshi
Dictator	Diktator/Zolim
Parliament	Oliy majlis
Ministry	Vazirlik
Election	Saylov
Official(s)	Amaldor(lar)
Political Party	Siyosiy partiya
Vote	Ovoz ber-
Republic	Respublika
State	Davlat
Democracy	Demokratiya
Democratic	Demokratik
Term of office	O'rin muddati
Policy	Siyosat
Human Rights	Inson huquqlari
Religious	Diniy
Racial	Irqi
Radical	Radikal
World	Dunyo
Conflict	Janjal/To'qnashuv
War	Urush
Invade	Bosib ol-
Nuclear weapons	Yadro qurollari



### 2. Listen to and read the following statements. While reading, note the use of the new vocabulary.

The Iraqi leader	Eroqning yurtboshi
The Russian officials	Rus amaldorlari
The South African government	Janubiy Afrikaning hukumati
Religious differences	Diniy farqlar
Middle East Conflict	Yaqin Sharq To'qnashuvi
The war in Iraq	Eroqdagi urush
The radical political party	Radikal siyosiy partiya
Islamic fundamentalism	Islomiy fundamentalizm

The President of the United States is George Bush.

**Amerika Qo'shma Shtatlari Presidenti Jorj Bushdir.**

Japan and Great Britain have prime ministers.

**Yaponiya va Buyuk Britaniyaning bosh ministrarlari bor.**

This was the first political election in that country.

**Bu o'sha mamlakatning birinchi siyosiy saylovi edi.**

Human rights are a very important issue in the world today.

**Inson huquqlari bugungi dunyoda juda muhim masaladir.**

To vote in Uzbek is ovoz ber-, to elect is sayla-. Elections is saylov. To go to war – urush qil-. Combat – jang. Bosh+liq from bosh-head = leader. Press, radio and TV in Uzbekistan are state owned and censored and nothing outside of approved text is ever published or aired. There are a few daily and weekly papers that are partially privately held, most notably Tasvir (image) and Hordiq (leisure) who publish exclusively social and showbiz gossip. International and domestic reporting is reduced to ridiculously flattering coverage of the president's trips abroad or of him meeting other nation's leaders and businessmen, always to the tremendous advantage of the Uzbek nation. Domestic affairs are covered strictly in terms of "the government is always right" and whatever it does is "for the good of the country".



**3. Listen to and read the following news report from Uzbekistan. Then answer the questions that follow.**

### **Jahon Savdo Tashkilotiga kirish O'zbekiston siyosiy irodasiga bog'liq**

Malik Mansur

Toshkent

19/06/2006

O'zbekiston Jahon Savdo Tashkilotiga kirish uchun 1994 yilda murojaat qilgan, lekin bu harakat hozirgacha boshlang'ich darajada qolmoqda. Mutaxassislarga ko'ra, O'zbekistonning Jahon Savdo Tashkilotiga qo'shilish jarayoni hukumatning siyosiy irodasiga bog'liq.

AQSh Xalqaro Taraqqiyot Agentligining Jahon Savdo Tashkilotiga a'zo bo'lishida texnik ko'mak ko'rsatish loyihasi direktori Umida Haqnazarga ko'ra, O'zbekiston va Jahon Savdo Tashkiloti o'rtasidagi muzokaralarni to'xtab qolgan deb bo'lmaydi.

1. O'zbekiston Jahon Savdo Tashkilotiga kirish uchun qachon murojaat qilgan?
2. Mutaxassislar O'zbekiston JST qo'shilish jaryoni to'grisida nima deyapti?
3. Umida Haqnazar kim?
4. O'zbekiston va Jahon Savdo Tashkiloti o'rtasidagi muzokaralarni to'xtab qolganmi?

**4. Work in small groups. Pretend that you are a crew working for a news program. Come up with a short description of a political event. Use the questions from Exercise 3 as an outline for your report.**

**5. Work in a small group or with a partner. Go over the information on the political system in Uzbekistan one more time. Recall the information in Uzbek. Report to your teacher and to the class.**

## Xalqaro Jo'g'rofiya



O'zbekiston Respublikasi Davlat Bayrog'i va



Gerbi



## 6. Read the information about Uzbekistan. Answer the questions.

O'zbekiston o'rta osiyoda joylashgan va ikki marta yer bilan o'rab olingan. Janubiy chegarasi Amudaryodir. O'zbekistonning janubi Afg'onistonning Mozori Sharif viloyati bilan chegaradoshdir. Mamlakatning yagona porti Termiz shahrida joylashgan. O'zbekistonning boshqa katta daryolaridan biri Sirdaryodir. Bu daryo O'zbekistonning shimoliy chegarasini tashkil etadi. Mamlakatning aholisining ko'pchiligi Farg'ona vodiya yashaydi. O'zbekistonning ko'pchiligi cho'l va sahrolardan iborat. To'rt ming ikki yuz to'qson toqqiz metrli Beshtor tog'i Pskem tog'larida joylashgan.

**Yer** - land

**Tog'** - mountain

**Tog'lar** – mountains

**Pereval** - mtn. pass

**Vodiy** - valley

**Daryo** - river

**Ko'prik** - bridge

**Chegara** - border

**Chegaradan o'tish tekshiruv posti** - border crossing

**Vatan** – motherland

**ShHT** – **Shanghai Hamkorlik Tashkiloti** – Shanghai Cooperation Organization

**Mintaqa** – region

**Qo'shni mamlakatlar** – neighboring countries

**Mustaqil Mamlakatlar Hamdo'stligi** – MMH – Commonwealth of Independent States

**O'rta Osiyo** – Central Asia

**Cho'l** – semi-desert / steppe

**Qism** - part

**Sahro** – desert

**Bayroq** –flag

**Davlat** – state

**Gerb** - Symbol

1. O'zbekiston qayerda joylashgan?
2. O'zbekistonning janubida qaysi mamlakat bilan chegaradosh?
3. Bu mamlakatning ikki eng katta daryosining nomlarini bilasizmi?
4. Mamlakatning aholisining ko'pchiligi qayerda yashaydi?
5. O'zbekistonning ko'pchiligi nimadan iborat\*?

*\*nimadan iborat?* – what does it consist of?



## 7. Listen to the speaker and follow along in your book.

Afghanistan/Afghani	Afg'oniston/Afg'on
Canada/Canadian	Kanada/Kanadalik
China/Chinese	Xitoy/Xitoy
Denmark/Danes	Daniya/Daniyalik
Egypt/Egyptian	Misr/Misrlk
England/English	Angliya/Angliyalik
Finland/Finn	Finlandiya/Finlandiyalik
France/French	Frantsiya/Frantsiyalik
Germany/German	Olmoniya/Nemis
Great Britain/British	Buyuk Britaniya/Buyuk Britaniyalik
India/Indian	Hinduston/Hindustonlik
Indonesia/Indonesian	Indoneziya/Indoneziyalik
Iran/Iranian	Eron/Eronlik
Iraq/Iraqi	Eroq/Eroqlik
Ireland/Irish	Irlandiya/Irlandiyalik
Israel/Israeli	Isroil/Isroillik
Italy/Italian	Italiya/Italiyalik
Japan/Japanese	Yaponiya/Yapon
Jordan/Jordanian	Yurdun/Yurdunlik
Korea/Korean	Koreya/Koreys
Kuwait/Kuwaiti	Quvayt/Quvaytlik
Mexico/Mexican	Meksika/Meksikalik
Netherlands/Dutch	Gollandiya/Gollandiyalik
Norway/Norwegian	Norvegiya/Norvegiyalik
Pakistan/Pakistani	Pokiston/Pokistonlik
Philippines/Filipino	Filipin/Filipin
Russia/Russian	Rossiya/Rus
Saudi Arabia/Saudi	Arabiston/Arab
Scotland/Scot	Shotlandiya/Shotlandiyalik
South Africa/South African	Janubiy Afrika/Janubiy Afrikalik
Spain/Spanish	Ispaniya/Ispaniyalik
Sweden/Swede	Shvetsiya/Shved
Syria/Syrian	Suriya/Suriyalik
Thailand/Thai	Tailand/Tai
Vietnam/Vietnamese	Vyetnam/Vyetnamlik
Wales/Welsh	Uels/Uelslik
North America	Shimoliy Amerika
Central America	Markaziy Amerika
South America	Janubiy Amerika
Western Europe	G'arbiy Yevropa
Central Europe	Markaziy Yevropa
Eastern Europe	Sharqiy Yevropa

Middle East	Yaqin Sharq
Southwest Asia	Janubi G'arbiy Osiyo
Southeast Asia	Janubi Sharqiy Osiyo
Africa	Afrika
Australia	Avstraliya
Eastern Asia	Sharqiy Osiyo
Arctic	Arktika
Antarctica	Antarktika

Generally Uzbeks form nationalities by adding the ending – lik to the name of the country with the few exceptions being traditional Arabic names of countries (see list above)



**8. Listen to and read the dialogues about nationality. Note the ways to determine one's nationality.**

Are you from Syria?  
**Siz Suriyadanmisiz?**

No, I'm from Egypt. I'm an Egyptian.  
**Yo'q, men Misrdanman. Men Misrlikman**

Are you American?  
**Siz Amerikalikmisiz?**

No, I'm Canadian.  
**Yo'q men Kanadalikman.**

What are you?  
**Sizning millatingiz nima?**

I'm Vietnamese.  
**Men Vyetnamlikman.**

Where are you from?  
**Siz qayerdانسiz?**

I'm from India. I'm Indian.  
**Men Hindustondanman. Men Hindustonlikman.**

Are you Indonesian?  
**Siz Indoneziyalikmisiz?**

Yes, I'm Indonesian. I live in Jakarta.  
**Ha, men Indoneziyalikman. Men Jakartada yashayman.**

Are you from Afghanistan?  
**Siz Afg'onistondanmisiz?**

I live in Afghanistan, but I am originally a Pakistani.  
**Men Afg'onistonda yashayman, lekin asli Pokistonlikman.**

**9. Create questions in Uzbek that are appropriate to the answers provided. Check your work with the answer key.**

1. - .....

- Yes, I'm Vietnamese.

Ha, men Vyetnamlikman.

2. - .....

- No, I'm not American. I'm Canadian.

Yo'q, men Amerikalik emasman. Men Kanadalikman.

3. - ..... or .....

- I live in Pakistan, but I'm originally Afghani.

Men Pokistonda yashayman, lekin asli Afg'onman.

4. - .....

- Yes, we are Iraqis.

Ha, biz Eroqlikmiz.



**10. What do you hear? The speaker will read one word from each line of text. Mark the word that you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- |    |              |           |             |         |
|----|--------------|-----------|-------------|---------|
| 1. | Afghanistan  | Pakistan  | Iran        | India   |
| 2. | Ireland      | Thailand  | Netherlands | England |
| 3. | Vietnam      | Indonesia | Japan       | China   |
| 4. | Saudi Arabia | Syria     | Israel      | Jordan  |
| 5. | Kuwait       | Iraq      | Egypt       | Russia  |



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

### 1. Translate the following headlines into English. Check your work with the answer key.

1. Xitoy Markaziy Osiyo mamlakatlari bilan yo'llar qurishni rejalamoqda.
2. O'zbekiston Mudofaa Vazirligining Xalqaro Bo`limining sobiq rahbari josuslik bilan ayblanib, 15 yillik qamoq jazosiga mahkum qilingan.
3. O'zbekistonlik inson huquqlari himoyachisiga xalqaro sovrin berildi.
4. Andijonlik havaskor rejissyor AQShda ikkinchi filmi yaratmoqda.
5. Oq Saroyda Rossiya Federatsiyasi Prezidenti Vladimir Putin Yurtboshimiz bilan uchrashdi.



### 2. Listen to and read the following news report from Uzbekistan, then answer the questions that follow.

Bugun Andijon shahrida xalq dushmanlari ertalab soat ikkida Ichki Ishlar Vazirligi qurol omboriga hujum qildilar. Terroristlar Andijon shahri qamoqxonasining qorovullari bilan jang qilib, uch nafar miltsioner o'ldirdilar va o'z tarafdorlarini va bir necha boshqa jinoyatchilarni ozod qildilar. Presidentimizning farmoniga binoan va bevosita rahbarligi ostida Andijonda qahramon militsiya va armiya a'zolari terroristlar va xalq dushmanlariga qarshi jang qilib, g'olib chiqdilar. Terroristlar va xalq dushmanlarining hammasi qo'lga tushdi va qamoqxonaga tashlandi. Lekin terroristlarning bir nechtasi qo'shni davlat Qirg'izistonga qochib ketishga ulgurdilar.

1. What was attacked in Andijan?
2. Who was freed from prison?
3. What was the president's role in the conflict?
4. Did anybody die in the conflict?
5. Who was put into prison?
6. Who fled to the neighboring country?

**3. Work with a partner or in a small group. From the list of the countries above, choose one and give a briefing on its location and political system. Pretend that you are giving a press conference. Your classmates will role-play the news reporters by asking you questions.**

The following questions may help you in your work:

1. Does this country have a president? Who is the current president?
2. How many political parties are there in this country?
3. Is there a war in this country now?
4. Does this country have a parliament?
5. Is there a democracy in this country?
6. Does this country have a prime minister?
7. Is the leader of this country a dictator?
8. Is this country a republic?
9. What is a specific geographical feature of this country?

## Vocabulary List

conflict	janjal/to'qnashuv
democracy/democratic	demokratiya/demokratik
dictator	diktator/zolim
dispute	bahs
election	saylov
government	hukumat
human rights	inson huquqlari
invade/invasion	bosib ol-
leader	yurtboshi
ministry	vazirlik
nuclear weapons	yadro qurollari
official	amaldor
parliament	oliy majlis
policy	siyosat
political party	siyosiy partiya
president	prezident
prime minister	bosh ministr
racial	irqiy
radical	radikal
religious	diniy
republic	respublika
state	davlat
term of office	o'rin muddati
to kill	o'ldir-
to vote	ovoz ber-
to elect	sayla-
war	urush
world	jahon/dunyo

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 3

Uzbekistan entry to the World Trade Organization tied with political will of the government.

By Malik Mansur from Tashkent 6/19/06

Uzbekistan applied for access to WTO in 1994 yet until now this move is still at the beginning stage. According to experts the process of joining the WTO by Uzbekistan is tied to the political will of the government. According to Umida Haqnazar, Director of the Technical Assistance Project, and member of the United States Agency for International Development, discussions between WTO and Uzbekistan did not stop.

1. When did Uzbekistan apply for membership in the WTO? Uzbekistan applied for membership in WTO in 1994.
2. What did experts say about Uzbekistan joining the WTO? Experts believe that the admission process is tied to the political will of the government.
3. Who is Umida Haqnazar? Umida Haqnazar is the Director of the Technical Assistance Project.
4. Did discussions between the WTO and Uzbekistan stop? Discussions between the WTO and Uzbekistan did not stop.

### Exercise 6

Uzbekistan is situated in Central Asia and is doubly landlocked. Its southern border is the Amu Darya River. The country's south also borders on Afghanistan's Mazar-i Sharif province. Uzbekistan's only active port is Termez. Another of Uzbekistan's big rivers is the Sir Darya. This river forms the northern border of Uzbekistan. Most of the nation's population lives in the Fergana valley. Most of the country is semi-desert and desert. The 14,104-foot (4,299-metre) Beshtor Peak is located in the Pskem Mountains.

1. Uzbekistan is located in Central Asia.
2. Afghanistan is on the southern border of Uzbekistan.
3. Uzbekistan has two big rivers: Amudarya and Syrdarya.
4. The highest population density in Uzbekistan is in the Fergana Valley.
5. Most of Uzbekistan is semi desert and desert with the highest peak in the Pskem mountain range, reaching 14,104 ft.

### Exercise 9

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Are you Vietnamese? | Siz Vyetnamlikmisiz?    |
| 2. Are you American?   | Siz Amerikalikmisiz?    |
| 3. Are you Pakistani?  | Siz Pokistonlikmisiz?   |
| 4. Are you Iraqi?      | Sizlar Eroqlikmisizlar? |

## Exercise 10

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. India     | Hinduston  |
| 2. England   | Angliya    |
| 3. Indonesia | Indoneziya |
| 4. Israel    | Isroil     |
| 5. Russia    | Rossiya    |

## End of Lesson Exercise 1

1. Member countries of Shanghai Cooperation Organization must build 25 major roads to China.
2. Former Head of the International Department of the Defense Ministry of Uzbekistan is sentenced to 15 years on espionage charges.
3. Uzbekistani human rights defender is given an international award.
4. Wheat Harvest Plan of 2006 is completed!

## Exercise 2

Today in Andijan at 2am enemies of the people attacked the Ministry of Internal Affairs armory. They battled with the prison guard and killed three policemen and freed their accomplices along with several other criminals. According to the president's order and under his direct supervision heroic members of the police and military fought terrorists and enemies of the people and emerged victorious. All of the terrorists and enemies of the people were captured and put into jail. However, a few of the terrorists escaped to the neighboring nation of Kyrgyzstan.

1. The Ministry of Internal Affairs armory was attacked in Andijan.
2. The accomplices of terrorists and enemies of the state were freed from prison.
3. The President was in charge of the military and police in the conflict.
4. Three policemen were killed.
5. Terrorists and enemies of the people were put into prison.
6. Enemies of the people and terrorists fled to the neighboring country.

## Lesson 19 The Military Armiya

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Basic military vocabulary
- The rank structure of the U.S. Army and Uzbek military forces
- Names of weapons and army vehicles.

1. What do soldiers do? What do soldiers use? What do soldiers wear? The pictures will help you to guess the meaning of unknown terms.



Bu soldatlar forma kiyadilar. Ular oyoqlariga etik va boshlariga kaska kiyadilar. Kaska ularni o'q-dori, to'p, va portlovchilardan himoya qiladi. Soldatlarning qo'llarida qurol bor.



Bu soldat miltig'ini otyapti.



Bu soldat ratsiya orqali komandiri bilan gapirlashyapti.



Bu soldatning raketa otadigan quroli bor.

**Note:**

The present continuous tense in Uzbek forms by inserting “*yap*” between the verb stem and the ending of the verb (where the usual +*di* and +*dilar* for the third person singular forms change to +*ti* and +*tilar*). Ot- = to shoot. Ot + yap+ ti = He/She/It is shooting.



**2. Now listen to the new words and repeat them after the speaker.**

Soldier	Soldat/Askar
Uniform	Forma
Boot(s)	Etik(lar)
Helmet	Kaska
To protect	Himoya qil-
Artillery	To'p(lar)
Ammunition	O'q-dori
Explosives	Portlovchi(lar)
Weapons	Qurol(lar)
Radio	Ratsiya
Commander	Komandir
To fire	Ot-
Rifle	Miltiq
Rocket launcher	Raketa otadigan qurol

**3. Read the statements and match each one with the correct picture. Check your answers with the answer key.**



1.



2.



3.

- A. Bu fuqaro. Uning quroli yo'q. Uning bolalari bor.
- B. Bu soldat. Uning quroli bor.
- C. Soldat fuqaroni qurolga tintuv qilyapti.

Do you understand what **“tintuv qil-”** means?



4. Listen to the new words and repeat them after the speaker.



1.

Bu mashina XAMVI.



2.



3.

O'ziyurar\* Raketa Otuvchi Mashina



4.

Tank



5.

O'ziyurar\* To'p



6.

Bronetranspotyor

\**O'ziyurar* – here it means self-propelled. The construction of the word formed by *o'z+i+yurar*, where *o'z* = self, *o'z+i* = itself, himself, herself, and *yurar* = moving, walking. So it literally means self-moving.

5. Now cover the names of the vehicles with a sheet of paper and name them. Repeat Exercise 4 as many times as you need to feel comfortable with the new terms.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....



6. Listen to the new words and repeat them after the speaker.



1



2



3



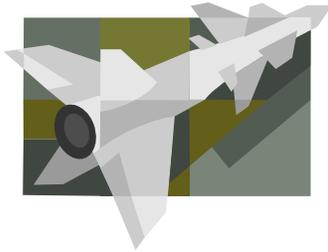
4



5



6



7



8



8

1 Mortar  
2 Rifle  
3 Machine gun  
4 Grenade

**Minomyot**  
**Miltiq**  
**Pulemyot**  
**Granata**

5 Mine  
6 Pistol  
7 Missile  
8 Weapons cache

**Mina**  
**Pistolet**  
**Raketa**  
**Qurol xilvatgohi**

7. Look at the pictures in Exercise 6. Cover the Uzbek translations and the English words in Exercise 6. Match each term with the correct picture. Replay the sound as many times as you need. Check your work with the answer key.

- A. Mina
- B. Raketa
- C. Granata
- D. Qurol xilvatgohi
- E. Pistolyet
- F. Minomyot
- G. Pulemyot
- H. Miltiq

8. In the following groups of four items, three belong to the group, but one does not logically belong. Cross it out then check your answers with the answer key.

- |    |         |          |             |          |
|----|---------|----------|-------------|----------|
| 1. | Tank    | Granata  | Gruzovik    | Xamvi    |
| 2. | Miltiq  | Minomyot | Kaska       | Pulemyot |
| 3. | Forma   | Soldat   | Fuqaro      | Komandir |
| 4. | Ratsiya | Karta    | Mina dalasi | Qurol    |
| 5. | Kaska   | To'plar  | Forma       | Etik     |
| 6. | Ofitser | Soldat   | Fuqaro      | Komandir |

9. Translate the following sentences into English. Check your answers with the answer key.

1. Soldatlar boshlarini o'q-doridan himoya qilish uchun kaska kiyadilar.
2. Soldatlar boshlarini portlovchi va to'plardan himoya qilish uchun kaska kiyadilar.
3. Biz hamma fuqarolarni qurolga tintuv qilamiz.
4. Biz hamma dushman soldatlarni qurolga tintuv qilamiz.



10. What do you hear? Listen to the speaker and mark the statement that you hear.

1. A. Soldiers wear helmets for protection from explosives.  
B. Soldiers wear helmets for protection from ammunition and artillery.
2. A. We are searching all civilians for weapons.  
B. We are searching all enemy soldiers for weapons.



**11. Listen and repeat the new words after the speaker.**

Army base	Armiya Bazasi
Be careful!	Ehtiyot bo'ling!
In charge of...	...ning kattasi*
Curfew	Harakat man' etilgan vaqt
Minefield	Mina dalasi
Roadblock	Blokpost
Checkpoint	Tekshiruv posti
Identification	Hujjat
Patrol	Patrul
Base	Harbiy Baza
Barracks	Kazarma

\* *katta* – literally “big” in all contexts pertaining to chain of command means “superior”

**12. Fill in the blanks with the correct word from the vocabulary list above. Check your answers with the answer key.**

- A. Patrulning \_\_\_\_\_ kim? Patrulning boshlig'i.
- B. \_\_\_\_\_ bormi? Ha, soat sakkizdan to soat oltigacha.
- C. \_\_\_\_\_! Yo'ning narigi\* tomonida \_\_\_\_\_ dalasi bor!
- D. Har bir odam \_\_\_\_\_ ko'rsatishi lozim.
- E. \_\_\_\_\_ qayerda? Bazaning narigi tomonida.

\* *narigi* – there, over there. Here it means “on the other side”

**13. Working with a partner, take turns reading and role-playing the dialogues from Exercise 12.**

**14. Working in a small group, make up similar dialogues, and then role-play them.**

**15. Study the list of U.S. Army ranks. Compare them with the Uzbekistan's military equivalents.**

<b>Enlisted</b>	<b>Chaqiriluvchi</b>
Private	<b>Ryadovoi</b>
Sergeant	<b>Serjant</b>
Sergeant Major	<b>Starshina</b>
Corporal	<b>Praporshik</b>
<b>Officer</b>	<b>Ofitser</b>
Lieutenant	<b>Leytenant</b>
Captain	<b>Kapitan</b>
Major	<b>Mayor</b>
Lt. Colonel	<b>Podpolkovnik</b>
Colonel	<b>Polkovnik</b>
General	<b>General</b>



### End-of-Lesson Tasks

1. Work with a partner or in a small group. In Uzbek, make up a caption for each picture below.



1. ....
2. ....
3. ....

2. a) Translate the following sentences into English. Check your work with the answer key.

- A. Qurol xilvatgoi qayerda?
- B. Bu patrolning kattasi kim?
- C. Tekshiruv postidan o'tganda hujjatingizni ko'rsatishingiz lozim.
- D. Hamma fuqarolarni qurolga tintuv qilish lozim.
- E. Harakat man' etilgan vaqt soat to'qqizda boshlanadi. Hozir soat to'qqizdan qirq besh minut o'tdi. Uyingizga qaytib boring.
- F. Bazaga faqat soldatlar kirishlari mumkin.

b) Work with a partner or in a small group. Make up situations where you can use sentences C, D, E, and F as a reply. Create the first part of the conversation so that you have short dialogues. Role-play them.

**3. a ) Translate the following into Uzbek. Compare your translation against the answer key.**

A. Please step out of the car. We must search the vehicle for weapons.

B. It is after curfew. You must come with me for questioning.

C. The weapons cache is on the other side of Checkpoint Delta.

D. Be careful. There is a minefield east of the railroad.

E. Every soldier needs to have a radio and a map.

F. You must know all the checkpoints and roadblocks in this area.

**b) Work with a partner or in a small group. Make up situations where you can use these sentences as a reply. Create the first part of the conversation so that you have short dialogues. Role-play them.**

## Vocabulary List

ammunition	o'q-dorilar
army base	armiya bazasi
artillery	to'plar
barracks	kazarma(lar)
base	baza
be careful!	ehtiyot bo'ling!
boots	etik(lar)
checkpoint	teqshiruv posti
civilian	fuqaro
commander	komandir
curfew	harakat man' etilgan vaqt
enemy	dushman
explosive	portlovchi
grenade	granata
gun	to'p
helmet	kaska
in charge of...	...ning kattasi
machine gun	pulemyot
map	karta
military	harbiy
mine	mina
minefield	mina dalasi
missile	raketa
mortar	minomyot
officer	ofitser
protection	himoya
radio	ratsiya
rank	unvon
rifle	miltiq
roadblock	blokpost
rocket	raketa
rocket launcher	raketa otadigan qurol
search	tintuv
soldier	soldat
tank	tank
uniform	forma
weapons	qurol(lar)
weapons cache	qurol xilvatgohi

Enlisted	Chaqiriluvchi
Private	Ryadovoy
Corporal	Praporshik
Sergeant	Serjant
Sergeant Major	Starshina
Officer	Ofitser
Lieutenant	Leytenant
Captain	Kapitan
Major	Mayor
Lt. Colonel	Podpolkovnik
Colonel	Polkovnik
General	General

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 3

1. C. The soldier searches the civilian for weapons.
2. B. He is a soldier. He has a weapon.
3. A. He is a civilian. He does not have weapons. He has children.

### Exercise 7

A. 5 mine	Mina
B. 7 missile	Raketa
C. 4 grenade	Granata
D. 8 weapons cache	Qurol xilvatgohi
E. 6 pistol	Pistolyet
F. 1 mortar	Minomyot
G. 3 machine gun	Pulemyot
H. 2 rifle	Miltiq

### Exercise 8

1. Tank	<del>Grenade</del>	Truck	Humvee
Tank	<del>Granata</del>	Gruzovik	Xamvi
2. Rifle	Mortar	<del>Helmet</del>	Machine Gun
Miltiq	Minomyot	<del>Kaska</del>	Pulemyot
3. <del>Uniform</del>	Soldier	Civilian	Commander
<del>Forma</del>	Soldat	Fuqaro	Komandir
4. Radio	Map	<del>Minefield</del>	Weapon
Ratsiya	Karta	<del>Mina dalasi</del>	Qurol
5. Helmet	<del>Artillery</del>	Uniform	Boots
Kaska	<del>To'plar</del>	Forma	Etik
6. Officer	Soldier	<del>Civilian</del>	Commander
Ofitser	Soldat	<del>Fuqaro</del>	Komandir

### Exercise 9

1. Soldiers wear helmets for protection from ammunition.
2. Soldiers wear helmets for protection from explosives and artillery.
3. We are searching all vehicles for weapons.
4. We are searching all enemy soldiers for weapons.

### Exercise 10

1. A. Soldatlar boshlarini portlovchilardan himoya qilish uchun kaska kiyadilar.  
Soldiers wear helmets for protection from explosives.
2. B. Biz hamma dushman soldatlarni qurolga tintuv qilamiz.  
We are searching all enemy soldiers for weapons.

### Exercise 12

- A. Who is **in charge of** the patrol? The patrol leader.
- B. Is there a **curfew**? Yes, from 8:00pm to 6:00am.
- C. **Be careful!** There is a **minefield** across the road!
- D. Everyone must show their **identification** at the **checkpoint**.
- E. Where are the **barracks**? On the other side of the base.

### End of Lesson Exercise 2a

- A. Where is the weapons cache?
- B. Who is in charge of this patrol?
- C. You must show your identification when you pass the checkpoint.
- D. All civilians must be searched for weapons.
- E. Curfew starts at 9:00pm. It's 9:45 now. Go back to your home.
- F. Only soldiers may enter the army base.

### Exercise 3a

- A. Iltimos, mashinadan chiqing. Biz qurolga tintuv qilishimiz lozim.
- B. Harakat man' etilgan vaqt boshlandi. Siz men bilan so'roqqa borishingiz kerak.
- C. Qurol xilvatgohi Delta tekshiruv postining narigi tomonida.
- D. Ehtiyot bo'ling! Temir yo'lining sharqiy tomonida mina dalasi bor.
- E. Har bir soldatda ratsiya va karta bo'lishi kerak.
- F. Siz hamma tekshiruv postlarini va blokpostlarni bilishingiz lozim.

## Lesson 20 In the Hospital Kasalxonada

This lesson will introduce you to:

- Vocabulary related to medical emergencies and life-saving measures
- Terminology related to internal organs
- Ways to ask questions about the vital signs.



Health care in Uzbekistan is free, but is owned and run by the state with a few exceptions being private clinics in Tashkent, which are more of an experiment. Generally, hospitals and district outpatient facilities are very low on funds, and get help by asking patients and their families to pitch in and buy medicines and supplies on the market, so the system is free in name only. Despite a number of dedicated professionals in the field, quality care is available only to the ruling elite and people related to them. Insurance is not available and ER visits are free, but are limited to basic life saving measures everywhere except the capital, where they are comparable to Western standards but extremely limited in volume capacity so it is a matter of chance.

Because of the difference in philosophies of health care any army-trained medic will be better equipped to administer CPR and basic restoring life procedures than the average doctor in Uzbekistan. Communication in Uzbek is crucial in rural areas, whereas in the cities and suburbs a surprising number of people are able to understand survival level English. Uzbeks are excellent team players and quick learners and health care providers are even more so. Outpatient facilities number in the thousands and hospitals in the hundreds and all are properly maintained but poorly equipped and supplied. Army medical teams will have no trouble in finding suitable locations appropriately staffed, but supply issues would be entirely up to the unit deployed.

**In Lesson 17, you already learned the names of human body parts, how to ask questions about a person's state of health, and how to describe health conditions and symptoms of sickness. You also know how to handle a visit to the doctor's office. In this lesson, you will familiarize yourself with the vocabulary used for life threatening health conditions, such as heart attacks, gunshot wounds, severe bleeding, and head injuries.**

1. Go over the text with the pictures. Try to guess the meaning of the words in bold from the context.



Bu odamning qo'li **shikastlangan**.\*



Bu ayolning qo'lida **yara** bor.



Bu odamning oyog'i **yaralangan**.



Bu odamning bo'yni **shikastlangan**.

**Did you understand the bolded words yara/yaralangan and shikast/shikastlangan?**

**Yara** means wound

**Yaralangan** means wounded

**Shikast** means injury

**Shikastlangan** means injured

\* *shikast* - injury. Noun+suffix+ending = adjective - *Shikast+lan+gan* = injured. This is the same with *yara*-wound. *Yara+lan+gan* = wounded.

2. Look at the pictures in Exercise 1 and match the number of the picture with the correct definition. Check your answers with the answer key.

- |                         |   |                      |
|-------------------------|---|----------------------|
| A. yaralangan oyoq      | - | picture number ____. |
| B. shikastlangan bo'yin | - | picture number ____. |
| C. qo'lida yara bor     | - | picture number ____. |
| D. shikastlangan qo'l   | - | picture number ____. |

3. Tell your classmates in Uzbek if you ever had an injury and/or wounds.



4. Listen to and read the dialogue between the doctor and the nurse in the emergency room of a military hospital. Note the use of new vocabulary.

Doctor: How does Sergeant Xojayev feel?

**Doktor: Serjant Xojayev qanday?**

Nurse: He feels bad, Doctor Hamrayev.

**Hamshira: Uning mazasi yo'q, Doktor Hamrayev.**

Doctor: What is the matter with him?

**Doktor: Unga nima bo'ldi?**

Nurse: His leg hurts.

**Hamshira: Uning oyog'i og'riyapti.**

Doctor: Is it injured?

**Doktor: Oyog'i shikastlanganmi?**

Nurse: Yes. He has a gunshot wound. He is bleeding.

**Hamshira: Ha, uning oyog'i otilgan. Uning qoni oqyapti.**

Doctor: Does he have a fever?

**Doktor: Uning isitmasi bormi?**

Nurse: Yes, he does.

**Hamshira: Ha, uning isitmasi bor.**

Doctor: Is he taking any medications?

**Doktor: U dori ichyaptimi?**

Nurse: Yes, antibiotics and painkillers.

**Hamshira: Ha, antibiotik va og'riq qoldiruvchi dori ichyapti**

5. Work with a partner. Role-play the dialogue from Exercise 4.

6. Match each of the pictures with the corresponding statement. Try to guess the meanings of unknown words from the context. Check your answers with the answer key.



A



B



C

1. Bu odamning yaralangan qo'lida **bint** bor.
  2. Bu odam qalpog'ini kiymadi. Bugun havo juda issiq. Endi\* uni **issiq urdi**.
  3. Bu soldatning oyog'i **shikastlangan**.
- \**endi* – now, as a result

Did you understand the meanings of the **bolded** words?

**Issiq urish** means *heat stroke*, **uni issiq urdi** literally means *he has a heat stroke*

**Bint** means *wrap/ bandage/dressing*



7. Listen to the speaker and read along in your textbook. Use the answer key to check the meanings of unknown words.



Bular bint va plastir.  
Ular sizning yarangizni o'rash uchun kerak.  
Ular toza bo'lishi kerak.



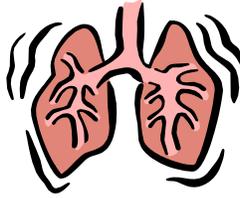
8. Familiarize yourself with some new medical terminology. Listen as the speaker recites the names of internal organs. Repeat after the speaker.



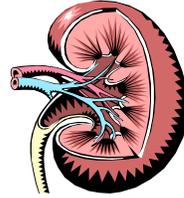
1



2



3



4



5

1. heart
2. brain
3. lung
4. kidney
5. liver

- Yurak  
Miya  
O'pka  
Buyrak  
Jigar

9. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate name of the organ in Uzbek. Check your answers with the answer key.

Yurak	Jigar	O'pka	Buyrak	Miya
-------	-------	-------	--------	------

- A. The human \_\_\_\_\_ is in charge of all body system functions.
- B. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a very important organ because it helps our body to get rid of fat.
- C. Exercising is very important for my \_\_\_\_\_.
- D. Smoking can cause \_\_\_\_\_ cancer.
- E. Drinking a lot of water is necessary for the \_\_\_\_\_ .



10. Listen to and read the dialogue between the doctor and a patient in a military hospital emergency room.

### In the Military Hospital Emergency Room



Doctor: Hello, Major Rahmonov.

**Assalom alaykum, Mayor Rahmonov**

Major: Good morning, Doctor Abdullayev.

**Vaalaykum assalom, Doktor Abdullayev**

Doctor: What happened to you?

**Sizga nima bo'ldi?**

Major: I don't now. I don't feel well. I have chest pain, headache, and dizziness.

**Bilmadim. Mening mazam yo'q. Ko'kragim va boshim og'riyapti va boshim aylanyapti.**

Doctor: For how long have you had your symptoms?

**Bu qachondan beri\* bo'lyapti?**

Major: For about 2 days.

**Taxminan ikki kundan beri.**

Doctor: Did you take any medications?

**Siz qandaydir dori ichdingizmi?**

Major: Yes, I took painkillers.

**Ha, og'riq qoldiruvchi dori ichdim.**

Doctor: For how long?

**Necha kundan beri?**

Major: For about 2 days... What happened to me, doctor?

**Taxminan ikki kundan beri. Menga nima bo'ldi, doktor?**

Doctor: Well, when you got in the ER, you couldn't breathe.

**Xo'sh, siz tez yordam bo'limiga kelganingizda nafas olmayotgan edingiz.**

You had abnormal blood pressure. It was 230 over 180. You had a heart attack.

**Sizning qon bosimingiz odatdagidan baland edi. Ikki yuz o'ttiz va bir yuz saksonga bordi. Siz infarkt bilan kasal bo'lib qoldingiz.**

What symptoms do you have now?

**Hozir qanday his qilyapsiz?**

Major: I feel weakness.

**Quvvatsiz his qilyapman.**

Doctor: Are you allergic to any medications?

**Biron bir\*\* doriga allergiyangiz bormi?**

Major: Yes, I'm allergic to penicillin.

**Ha, penitsilinga allergiyam bor.**

Doctor: Do you have any kidney, liver, lung, or brain diseases? Diabetes? Cancer?

**Sizda buyrak, jigar, o'pka yoki miya kassaligi bormi? Diabet? Rak?**

Major: No, I don't.

**Yo'q, menda yo'q**

Doctor: Do you smoke?

**Chekasizmi?**

Major: No, I don't.

**Yo'q, chekmayman.**

Doctor: Do any members of your family have heart diseases or had a heart attack?

**Oilangizning biron bir a'zosida yurak kasalligi yoki infarkt bo'lganmi?**

Major: Yes, my father died three years ago from heart disease.

**Ha, uch yildan oldin mening otam yurak kasalligidan vafot etdi.**

Doctor: Well, I think you must stay in the hospital and rest for a few days.

**Xo'sh, o'ylaymanki, siz kasalxonada bir necha kun yotib, dam olishingiz lozim.**

Major: But I need to get back to my unit!

**Lekin men bo'linmamga qaytishim kerak!**

Doctor: No, you have to stay in the hospital, rest, and take aspirin.

**Yoq, siz kasalxonada yotib, dam olishingiz va aspirin ichishingiz kerak.**

\**qachondan beri* – the phrase asking since when with *qachon* being plain 'when' and *beri* 'since.'

**11. Work with a partner. Pretend to be a doctor and a patient and role-play the dialogue from Exercise 10.**



**12. Match the questions and answers. When you have finished, listen to the answer key and check your answers.**

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| A. Qandaysiz?                   | 1. Yes, I have a gunshot injury in my arm.    |
| B. Sizga nima bo'ldi?           | 2. I feel weakness and dizziness.             |
| C. Qanday his qilyapsiz?        | 3. My wound is bleeding.                      |
| D. Biron joyingiz og'riyaptimi? | 4. My stomach hurts.                          |
| E. Qayeringiz og'riyapti?       | 5. Yes, I have a chest pain. I can't breathe. |
| F. Shikastlanganmisiz?          | 6. Yes, painkillers.                          |
| G. Siz dori ichyapsizmi?        | 7. I feel really bad.                         |

\* *Nafas ola olmayapman* – I can't breathe. You'll remember this structure (*V-a ol-* from previous chapters). Colloquially this is often slurred to *V-ol-*, so *nafas ololmayapman* is also possible.



**13. What do you hear? Listen to the speaker and mark the statement that you hear. Check your answers with the answer key.**

1. A. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a pain in my arm.  
B. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a pain in my leg.  
C. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a pain in my neck.
  
2. A. How do you feel? I don't feel well. I have a chest pain.  
B. How do you feel? I don't feel well. I feel dizziness.  
C. How do you feel? I don't feel well. I can't breathe.
  
3. A. Is there a doctor here? This man just had a heart attack.  
B. Are you a doctor? This man just had a heart attack.  
C. I am a doctor. This man just had a heart attack.



## End-of-Lesson Tasks

### 1. Practice answering the following questions in Uzbek:

- A. What is your normal pulse?
- B. What is your normal blood pressure?
- C. Are you allergic to any medications?
- D. Have you ever had a head injury?
- E. Have you ever had heat stroke?

**2. Work with a partner or in a small group. Look at the picture and tell in Uzbek what you think had happened with a patient. You might want to mention the following things: Is the patient a man or a woman? What is his/her age? Is he/she a soldier? Is he/she wounded? Is he/she injured? Is he/she in pain? Does he/she have bleeding? Does he/she have a fever? Will he/she need to stay in the hospital? Does he/she have high blood pressure? Does he/she have chest pain? Is he/she having a heart attack? Can he/she breathe? Will he/she need CPR? Is he/she allergic to the medications? Does he/she take any medications?**



## Vocabulary List

aspirin	aspirin
bandage	bint
bleeding	qon oqishi
brain	miya
breathing	nafas olish
cancer	rak
cpr	hayot saqlash tadbirlari
cut	kesish
diabetes	diabet
er	tez yordam bo'limi
gunshot wound	o'qdan bo'lgan yara
... has been shot.	... otilgan.
head injury	bosh shikasti
heart	yurak
heart attack	infarkt
heart disease	yurak kasalligi
heat stroke	issiq urish
high blood pressure	baland qon bosim
i am allergic to.../are you allergic to...?	menda ...ga bo'lgan allergiya bor/sizda ...ga bo'lgan allergiya bormi?
injured	shikastlangan
injury	shikast
kidney	buyrak
liver	jigar
lungs	o'pka
organs	badan a'zolari
painkillers	og'riq qoldiruvchi dori(lar)
penicillin	penitsillin
pulse	puls
sterile	tozalangan
to die	o'l-/vafot et-
to stay	qol-
wound/ wounded	yara/yaralangan

## ANSWER KEY

### Exercise 2

- A. 3 Wounded leg
- B. 4 Injured neck
- C. 1 and/or 2 Wounded arm
- D. 1 Injured arm

### Exercise 6

- A. 3 This soldier has an **injured** leg.
- B. 2 This man didn't wear his hat. It was very hot today. Now he has **heat stroke**.
- C. 1 This man has a **bandage** on his wounded arm.

### Exercise 7

These are bandages and band-aids.  
You need them to make a dressing for a cut or wound.  
They have to be sterile.

### Exercise 9

- A. miya
- B. jigar
- C. yurak
- D. o'pka
- E. buyrak

### Exercise 12

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>A. Qandaysiz?</b>                   | 7. Mening mazam yo'q.                              |
| A. How do you feel?                    | 7. I feel really bad.                              |
| <b>B. Sizga nima bo'ldi?</b>           | 3. Yaramdan qon oqyapti.                           |
| B. What is the matter with you?        | 3. My wound is bleeding.                           |
| <b>C. Qanday his qilyapsiz?</b>        | 2. Mening quvvatim yo'q va boshim aylanyapti       |
| C. What do you feel?                   | 2. I feel weakness and dizziness.                  |
| <b>D. Biron joyingiz og'riyaptimi?</b> | 5. Ha, ko'ragim og'riyapti. Nafas ola olmayapman*. |
| D. Are you in pain?                    | 5. Yes, I have a chest pain. I can't breathe.      |
| <b>E. Qayeringiz og'riyapti?</b>       | 4. Qornim og'riyaptiyi.                            |
| E. Where does it hurt?                 | 4. My stomach hurts.                               |
| <b>F. Shikastlanganmisiz?</b>          | 1. Ha, mening qo'lim otilgan.                      |
| F. Are you injured?                    | 1. Yes, I have a gunshot injury in my arm.         |
| <b>G. Siz dori ichyapsizmi?</b>        | 6. Ha, og'riq qoldiruvchi dori.                    |
| G. Are you taking any medication?      | 6. Yes, painkillers.                               |

### Exercise 13

1. C. What are your symptoms? I have a fever and a pain in my neck.  
Siz qanday his qilyapsiz? Mening isitmam bor va bo'ynim og'riyapti.
2. A. How do you feel? I don't feel well. I have a chest pain.  
Qandaysiz? Mening mazam yo'q. Ko'ragim og'riyapti
3. B. Are you a doctor? This man just had a heart attack.  
Siz doktormisiz? Bu odam hozir infarkt bilan kasal bo'lib qoldi.

\**Bu yerda* = here